

**RANGE
ROVER**

RANGE ROVER EVOQUE

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Publication Part Number. LRL10 02 60 122

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Land Rover is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the Land Rover internet site at; **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

Symbols used in this handbook



Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.



Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



This symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



Identifies features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

© Land Rover 2011.

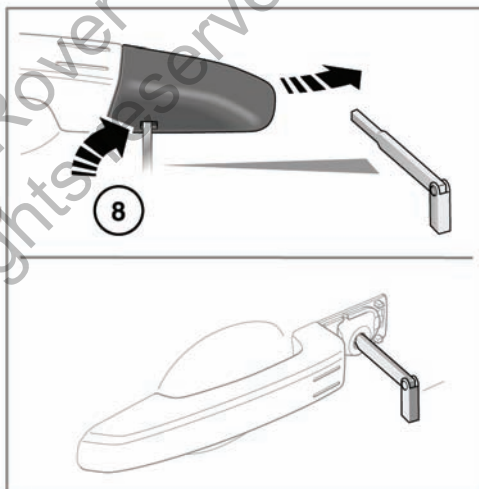
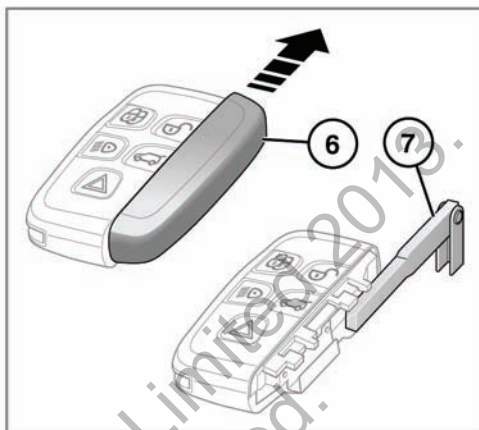
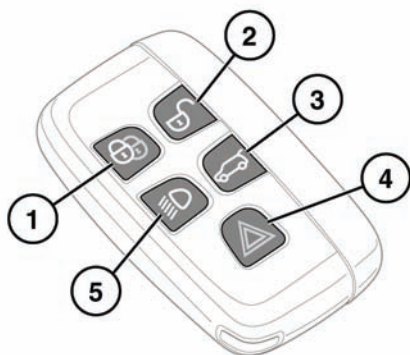
All rights reserved.

Published by Land Rover Technical Communications.

Introduction.....	2	Parking aids	104
Entering the vehicle	4	Cameras	106
Exiting the vehicle.....	12	Touch screen.....	108
Front seats.....	17	Audio/video overview	113
Rear seats	22	Radio.....	119
Head restraints	23	DAB radio	121
Seat belts.....	25	Portable media	124
Child safety.....	29	Television	130
Airbags	35	Video media player.....	132
Steering wheel.....	39	Dual view.....	134
Exterior lights	40	Rear media	137
Interior lights.....	44	Voice control	141
Wipers and washers	46	Telephone.....	144
Windows	49	Navigation system.....	150
Mirrors	51	Standard audio overview	165
Blind spot monitoring.....	54	Standard audio	167
Garage door opener.....	56	Fuel and refuelling.....	179
Instrument panel	59	Maintenance.....	184
Driver information centre	61	Vehicle cleaning	194
Warning lamps	63	Fluid level checks	198
Heating and ventilation	67	Vehicle battery.....	205
Storage compartments	72	Fuses.....	209
Load carrying	74	Technical specifications	217
Towing	76	Tyre pressure monitoring system.....	223
Starting the engine	80	Tyre repair kit.....	225
Gearbox.....	84	Tyres	230
Brakes	87	Wheel changing.....	235
Cruise control.....	90	Vehicle recovery	239
Stability control	92	After a collision	242
Traction control	93	Vehicle labels	243
Suspension.....	94	Type approval.....	244
Terrain response	95	Controls overview.....	272
Hill descent control.....	98		
Park assist.....	100		

Entering the vehicle

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart Key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

Note: The operational range of the Smart Key will vary considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: If any door or the tailgate is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the latch is disabled for approximately one minute.

The vehicle is supplied with two Smart Keys. The Smart Keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system and allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked and driven without the use of a conventional key. See **7, KEYLESS ENTRY, 14, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **80, ENGINE STARTING**. Each Smart Key also has an emergency key housed in a slide out compartment.

1. Lock:

- Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See **12, SINGLE LOCKING**. See **12, DOUBLE LOCKING**.

See also **13, GLOBAL CLOSING**.

2. Unlock:

- Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and deactivate the alarm. See **6, SINGLE-POINT/MULTI-POINT ENTRY**. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been deactivated. The interior lamps and puddle lamps will illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle.

See also **6, GLOBAL OPENING**.

Power fold mirrors will unfold (if enabled).

3. Tailgate release:

- Press briefly to open the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the security system will remain active while the tailgate is open, but intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be disabled.

When closing the tailgate again, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash after a few seconds to confirm the full alarm system has been reactivated. There will also be an audible sound if the vehicle was double locked. See **8, OPERATING THE TAILGATE**.



Ensure that the Smart Key does not remain in the vehicle prior to closure. If the vehicle is in an area of localised RF interference or the Smart Key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.

4. Panic alarm:

- Press and hold for three seconds (or press three times within three seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lamps.
- Once active for more than five seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the button and holding for three seconds (or pressing three times within three seconds).
- The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if a valid Smart Key is present when the START/STOP button is pressed.

5. Approach illumination:

- When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to turn the approach lamps off.

- The approach illumination period set at the factory is 30 seconds. This delay period may be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

Note: In some markets a second press of the button will turn on the headlamps and reversing lamps. A third press will be required to turn the lamps off.

6. Emergency key access:
Slide open the side cover.
7. Remove the emergency key blade and unfold.
8. If the Smart Key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the door lock cover and gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully twist the key blade, to lever the cover off the retaining clips. Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm will sound.

Note: When the left hand front door is unlocked using the key blade, the alarm will sound until the Smart Key is positioned correctly.

Note: A replacement Smart Key can be obtained only from your Land Rover Dealer. The Dealer will require proof of identification and ownership.

Notify your Dealer immediately if a Smart Key is lost or stolen.

9. Keyless entry/exit:
 - Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

SINGLE-POINT/MULTI-POINT ENTRY

When you press the unlock button, your vehicle will unlock in one of two ways:

1. Single Point Entry: Unlocks the driver's door and fuel filler flap only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. Multi-Point Entry: Unlocks all doors, fuel filler flap and the tailgate on the first press.

To change from Single to Multi-Point entry (or vice versa), press both the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for three seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the change.

This feature may also be set via the settings menu. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

Note: If, when the vehicle is unlocked, an audible warning is emitted, this will be a 'Mislock' error. There may be a fault with either of the alarm sensors. Consult with your Dealer /Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

GLOBAL OPENING

Press and hold the Smart Key unlock button for 3 seconds to unlock the vehicle and open all windows.

Press any button on the Smart Key to cancel the operation.

KEYLESS ENTRY

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a Smart Key is within 1.0m (3ft) of the door handle or the tailgate external switch.

- ❗ The Smart Key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including laptop bag), games console etc. Keep the Smart Key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.

Note: The Smart Key needs only to be on the driver's person or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. It does not need to be exposed or handled.

To enter the vehicle, just pull the door handle. The alarm will be disarmed and the doors unlocked according to the current unlock/entry setting (Single or Multi-Point). The hazard warning lamps will flash twice as 'unlock' confirmation. Power folded mirrors will fold out (if enabled).

Note: If Single Point Entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all doors will unlock.

SMART KEY CHECK

If the ignition is on or the engine is running and there is no Smart Key inside the vehicle when the last door is closed, the message **Smart Key Not Found Refer to Handbook** will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

- ❗ Ensure that the Smart Key is in the vehicle before it is driven to another location. Without the Smart Key, if the ignition is turned off, it cannot be turned on again.

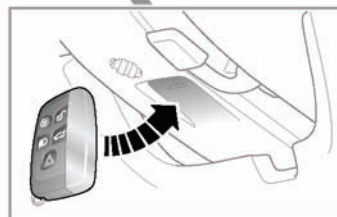
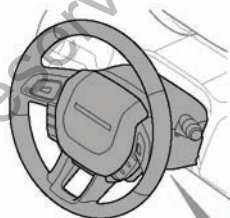
If only the ignition is on and the Smart Key is removed from the vehicle and the driver's door is the last to be closed, the ignition will switch off.

Note: The engine cannot be started without the Smart Key inside the vehicle.

DISARMING IF THE SMART KEY AND KEYLESS ENTRY FAIL

The vehicle can still be unlocked and the alarm disabled. To unlock the vehicle:-

1. Unlock the left side front door using the key blade. The alarm will be triggered.
2. Position the Smart Key against the underside of the steering column cover with the buttons facing downwards.



SL1890

3. Now press the START/STOP button.

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm has been triggered, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the Smart Key.
- Opening a door using keyless entry.
- Positioning a valid Smart Key underneath the steering column and pressing the START/STOP button. See previous graphic.

SMART KEY TRANSMITTERS



Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should ensure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 inches) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. See 222, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK



During vehicle recovery, a Smart Key must remain inside the vehicle, so that the steering column remains unlocked. See 239, RECOVERY METHOD.

Your vehicle is fitted with an electronic steering column lock, which locks and unlocks in conjunction with the vehicle locking system. It also locks automatically, after a time delay, if the ignition is switched off and the Smart Key is removed from the vehicle.

Any malfunction of the steering column lock will be indicated by the message **Steering Column Locked** being displayed in the Driver information centre. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the Smart Key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock, by turning the steering wheel gently to the left and right.
3. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

VALET MODE DEACTIVATING

If Valet mode is active when you enter the vehicle, touch the **Valet** button to view the Valet mode screen.

Enter your four digit PIN and touch the **OK** button.

Valet mode is deactivated is displayed.

- The tailgate will return to the previously set security requirement.
- All touch screen functions are enabled.

See 15, VALET MODE ACTIVATING.

Note: If the PIN number is lost or forgotten, Valet mode can be deactivated only by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

OPERATING THE TAILGATE

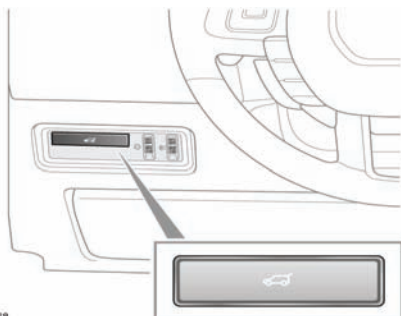


Ensure there is minimum space of 1.0M (39 in) above the rear of vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient space may result in damage to the vehicle.



Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

There are two types of tailgate, powered and manual.



SL1768

Both types of tailgate can be released using:

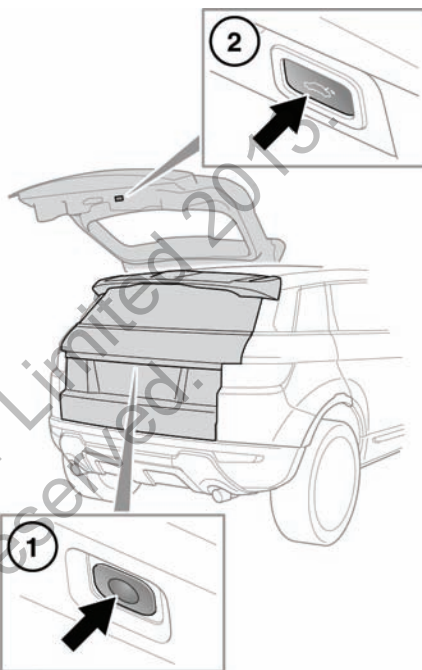
- the appropriate button on the Smart Key,
- the internal release switch,
- the external release switch on the tailgate.

Note: The tailgate will not open if the vehicle is travelling at or above approximately 5km/h (3.1mph).

Note: When using the external release switch, all doors must be unlocked and the gear selector in Park (P) position.

Note: If the Smart Key is inadvertently left inside the luggage compartment and the vehicle is locked and the alarm set, an audible warning will sound and the tailgate will re-open after three seconds.

OPERATING THE POWERED TAILGATE



SJ1702

1. Press to open the powered tailgate.
2. Press and release to close the powered tailgate.

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually then press the tailgate release switch again.

As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it will 'soft close' to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, all doors will re-lock automatically to the previous locked state and the alarm will re-arm. The hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm the lock status. An audible confirmation may also be given.

Note: If a tailgate switch is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement will stop. However, if a switch is pressed during the 'soft close' stage, the open request will be ignored.



Before operating the tailgate, ensure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the 'soft close' action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement will stop. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate switch again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing, tailgate movement will stop and then reverse a short distance. An audible warning will be given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate switch again to close.



While the tailgate is open, the locking platform and latch are exposed. Do not manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.

POWERED TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height can be set as required. This is useful in parking areas with low ceiling heights or just for ease of use.

1. Open the tailgate to the position which you want to set as the maximum height. Press any tailgate control to stop movement at the required position. Final position can be achieved manually if required.
2. Ensure that the tailgate is stationary for at least three seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close switch for ten seconds to set the maximum opening height.
4. Close the tailgate, then open again to check that it opens to the programmed height.

Note: If, after performing part 3 of the process the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process ensuring that all steps are adhered to.

To reset the maximum opening height, repeat the process, but when the tailgate reaches its current programmed height, manually move it to the fully open position before pressing and holding the button.

POWERED TAILGATE PROGRAMME LOSS

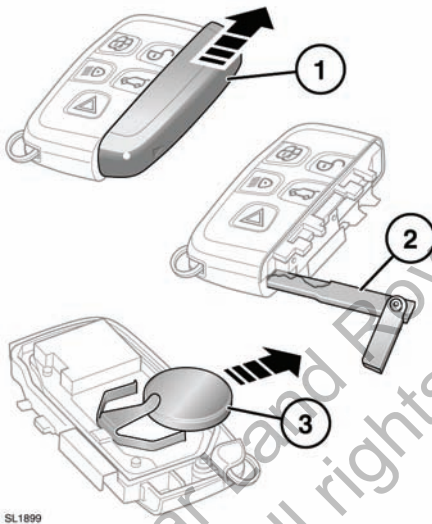
The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or if battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited. To reset the tailgate;

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a release switch.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close switch.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully.

The tailgate programmed position memory will now be restored.

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs renewing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and the message **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** will be displayed in the Driver information centre.



SL1899

To renew the battery:

1. Slide open the side cover.
2. Remove the emergency key and fit into the receiver.
3. With the key unfolded, twist it to split the Smart Key case open.
4. Remove the old battery and fit a new CR2032 type battery (available from your Dealer), with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note: Avoid touching the new battery, as moisture/oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.

Refit the parts in reverse order, ensuring that they click securely into place.



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances.

Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer and/or your local authority.

SMART KEY CARE



To prevent accidental operation, which may result in an injury, never leave the Smart Key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, humidity or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and attach it to the designated area in the Service Portfolio, supplied in the literature pack. Keep this safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the Smart Key will vary considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: The radio frequency used by the Smart Key may be used by other devices (e.g. medical equipment). This may prevent the Smart Key from operating correctly.

LOCKING AND ARMING THE ALARM.

- ⚠ CAUTION: No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

There are two levels of security:

- Single locking. With all doors and tailgate closed, press the lock button on the Smart Key once, to Single lock the vehicle and activate the perimeter alarm. The alarm LED in the instrument panel will start to flash and the hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm locking. Power fold mirrors will fold in (if enabled).
- Double locking. A second press within three seconds will Double lock the vehicle and activate the full alarm system. The hazard warning lamps will flash a second time to confirm the enhanced Double lock state. An audible confirmation may also be given. The audible warning can be set/disabled via Audible Lock Warning in the Vehicle Settings menu. See **59**.

VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU.

- ⚠ The vehicle will not lock if a door, the tailgate or the bonnet aperture is open, or the ignition is ON. No lamps will flash and if the lock request is via the Smart Key, there will be an audible mislock warning.
- ⚠ Ensure that the Smart Key does not remain in the vehicle prior to closure. If the vehicle is in an area of localised RF interference or the Smart Key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.
- ⚠ Remove any additional Smart Keys from the vehicle before locking.

Note: The fuel filler flap can be opened only when the alarm is disarmed.

SINGLE LOCKING

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened using the interior door locks and release levers. In this state, only the perimeter (exterior) alarm is activated. When the vehicle is Single locked and the alarm is armed, the alarm will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door is opened.

In some markets where a battery backed sounder is fitted the following actions will also sound the alarm:

- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm siren.

Note: Single locking should be used in circumstances such as travelling on a ferry, if pets are to be left in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open.

DOUBLE LOCKING



Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors being opened from inside or outside of the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside the vehicle when double locked.

This provides additional security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the interior door locks and release levers.

Additionally, double locking also activates the full alarm system with intrusion sensing (market dependent) and tilt sensing. When the vehicle is Double locked the alarm will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door is opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle interior.
- A window, front or rear screen or panoramic sunroof glass is broken.
- The vehicle is raised or tilted.

In some markets where a battery backed sounder is fitted the following actions will also sound the alarm:

- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm siren.

Note: In this state, an open window may cause the alarm to sound due to the movement of air currents. For this reason, ensure all windows are fully closed before double locking the vehicle.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed (either by single or double locking), press either the Smart Key lock button or, if Keyless entry is fitted, touch an exterior door handle lock sensor. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

Note: If the vehicle is **not** already locked and armed, pressing the lock button will single lock the vehicle. Press again to double lock, if required.

AUTOMATIC RELOCKING AND ARMING OF THE ALARM

If a door, tailgate or bonnet are not opened within 40 seconds of unlocking the vehicle via the Smart Key, all doors will re-lock automatically to the previous locked state and the alarm will re-arm.

MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the Smart Key, if one or more of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate is not fully closed, or the ignition is ON, the vehicle will NOT lock and there will be an audible mislock error warning. The hazard warning lamps will NOT flash and the door mirrors (if enabled) will NOT fold in. Check that all doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed properly. Ensure the ignition is turned OFF and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

GLOBAL CLOSING



Ensure that no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating global closing.

Ensure that all doors are closed. Press and hold the Smart Key lock button for three seconds. The vehicle will single lock and the alarm will be armed immediately. After three seconds any open windows will be closed.

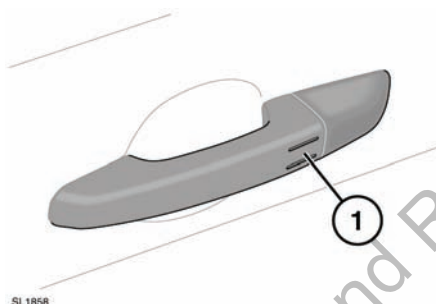
KEYLESS LOCKING



Never double lock the vehicle with people, children or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.



The Smart Key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including laptop bag), games console etc.



The vehicle will not lock automatically.

Note: Keyless locking will activate only if the Smart Key is detected outside the vehicle. If no Smart Key is present, no locking will occur.

- To single lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor on the door handle (1) once without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm locking. Power fold mirrors will fold in (if enabled).

- To double lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor (1) twice within three seconds without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm (with a long second flash). Power fold mirrors will fold in (if enabled). An audible confirmation may also be given (if enabled).

Note: When locking the vehicle via Keyless locking, if one or more of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate is not fully closed, or the ignition is ON, the vehicle will NOT lock. There will be NO audible mislock error warning. The hazard warning lamps will NOT flash and the door mirrors (if enabled) will NOT fold in. Check that all doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed properly. Ensure the ignition is turned OFF and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

KEYLESS GLOBAL CLOSING

To initiate global window closing (if enabled), touch and hold the lock sensor (1) for three seconds. This will also single lock the vehicle and activate the alarm.

Note: The windows will close only while the sensor (1) is covered. To fully secure the vehicle, continue to touch the sensor until all windows are fully closed.

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all doors at a set speed when the vehicle is in motion. This feature can be enabled/disabled via Drive-away locking in the Vehicle Settings menu. See 59, **VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

VALET MODE ACTIVATING

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven, e.g., by a parking attendant, but leaves the tailgate locked and restricts use of the touch screen. This prevents access to telephone numbers, navigation addresses and audio system settings.

From the **Home** menu, select **Valet**:

Enter a four digit Personal identification Number (PIN) (personally chosen). On completion, touch the **OK** soft key.

If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**.

After entering the PIN, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again. Enter the same PIN and touch **OK** to confirm.

A pop-up screen is displayed, confirming your vehicle is now in Valet mode.

INTERIOR PROTECTION

The interior protection feature of the full alarm system may be temporarily disabled via Alarm sensors in the Vehicle Settings menu. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

Note: If the interior protection is temporarily disabled, it will be automatically enabled the next time the vehicle is double locked with the Smart Key.

BATTERY-BACKED SOUNDER

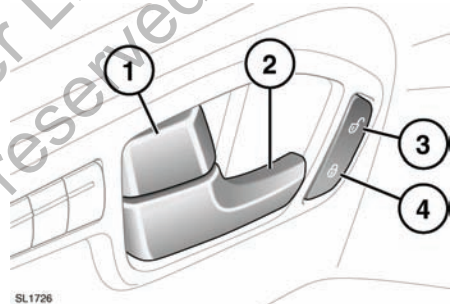
In certain markets, a battery backed sounder is fitted. This device will sound if it or the vehicle battery is disconnected while the security system is armed.

TILT SENSOR

The tilt sensor detects any change to the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is double locked, any change in the vehicle's angle will activate the tilt alarm.

Note: The tilt sensors can be temporarily disabled for the next time the vehicle is locked. See Alarm Sensors, **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**. The sensors will be automatically enabled the next time the vehicle is double locked with the Smart Key.

DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



1. Press a locking lever to lock a door. Pull the lever back to unlock. Operating either front door locking levers will lock or unlock all doors.
2. Pull a release lever to open a front door.
To unlock and open a rear door, first operate the lock lever, then pull the release lever.
3. Press the master unlock button to unlock all doors and tailgate.
4. With all doors closed, press the master lock button to lock all doors and tailgate.

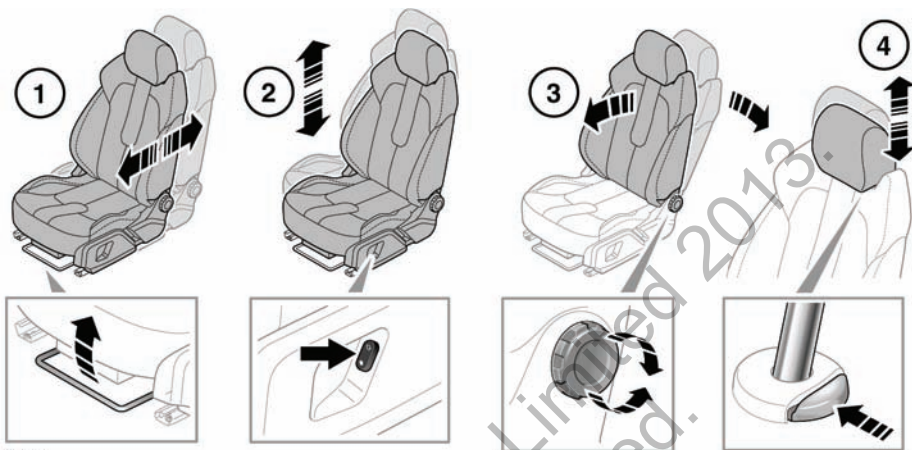
Exiting the vehicle

Note: If the vehicle was locked with the Smart Key, operating an interior door release lever will unlock only that door. If the door is opened the alarm will sound.

Note: If the vehicle has been double locked, the interior door release levers will not operate. The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart Key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

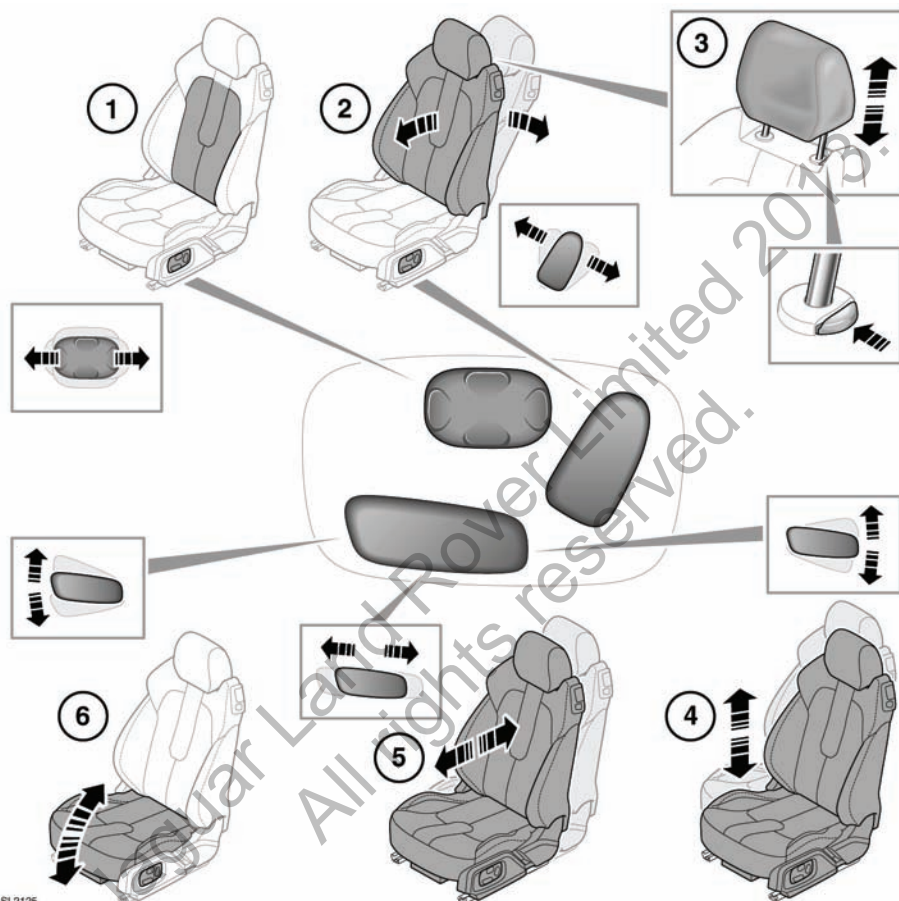
MANUAL SEATS



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Forward and back adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Backrest adjustment.
4. Head restraint adjustment.

ELECTRIC SEATS



1. Lumbar support adjustment.
2. Backrest adjustment.
3. Head restraint adjustment.
4. Height adjustment.
5. Forward and back adjustment.
6. Cushion angle adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the Smart Key must be inside the vehicle.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

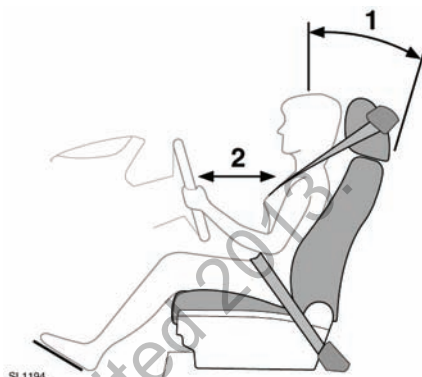
RESTRICTED SEAT TRAVEL

- ❗ If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment check for any obstructions and remove.

Once any obstructions have been removed the seat adjustment mechanism can be reset as follows.

Operate the button again to continue the stalled adjustment. When seat movement resumes hold the button until the end of travel in that direction has been reached. The seat position can now be carried out as normal.

Note: If no obstructions can be seen, but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact your Land Rover Dealer/Approved Repairer.



SL1194

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

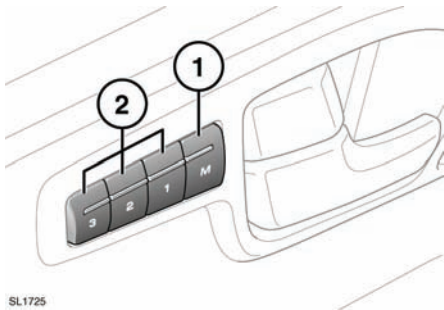
The seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components will give you greater protection. Therefore, you should always observe the following points:

1. Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible and the seatback reclined no more than 30 degrees.
 2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254mm (10in) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with your arms slightly bent.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head.
 - Position the seat belt so that it is mid-way between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.
 - Ensure that your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY

Front seat positions can be saved to vehicle memory.

Once you have adjusted the power operated driver's seat and the exterior mirrors, the vehicle can memorise the settings for future use. See **51, EXTERIOR MIRRORS**.



1. On the driver's door, press the memory store button to activate the memory function. The switch indicator will illuminate.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within five seconds to memorise the current settings.

Memory (1, 2 or 3) Settings Saved will be displayed on the Driver information centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been saved to memory.

Note: A seat position will be saved to memory only during the five second active period.

Note: Any existing settings will be over-written when a new position is saved to memory.

To recall a saved position, press the relevant preset button (2). **Memory (1, 2 or 3) Recalled** will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

Coupe passenger seat

Saving a seat position to memory follows the same procedure as for the driver's seat. Press the memory button to store the current seat settings.

EASY ENTRY/EXIT

When Easy entry/exit is enabled, the driver's seat will automatically lower when the ignition is switched off and the door is opened. Upon returning to the vehicle, when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is turned on, the seat will return to its previously set position.

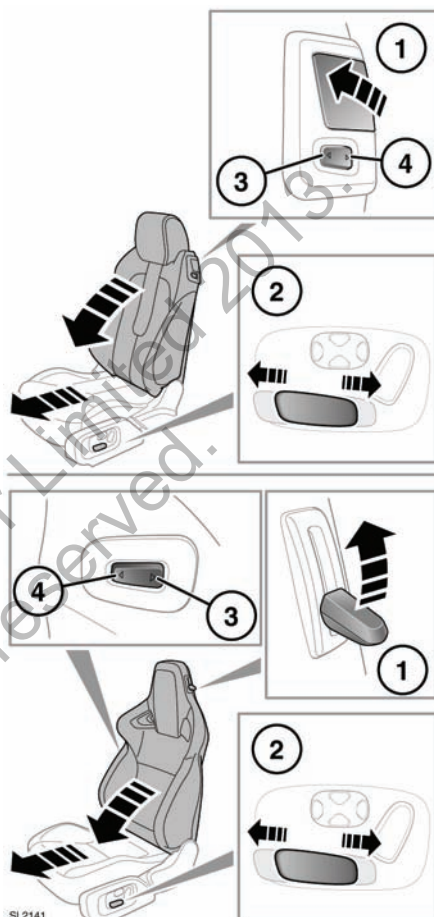
See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

REAR SEAT ACCESS

The front seats tilt and power slide forwards for entry to and exit from the rear seats. Operation is controlled by the forward and back switch on the lower side of the seat, a lever high up on the outer side of the seat and for rear seat passengers, a secondary small switch also located high on the side of the seat.

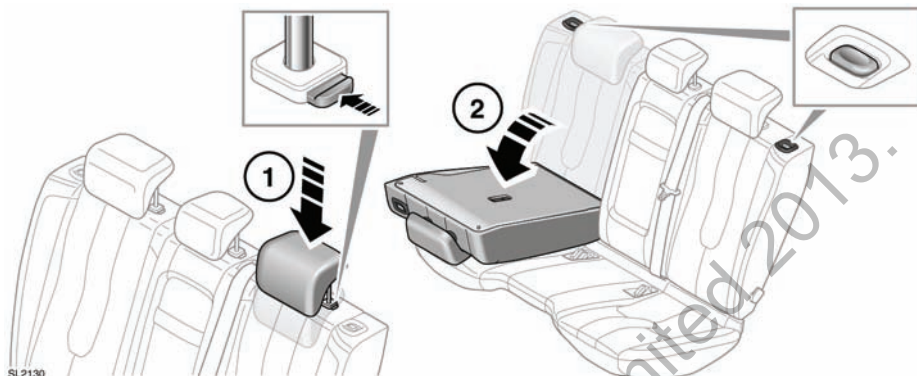
1. Lift the locking lever and pivot the seatback forwards.
2. Push the switch forwards to power the seat forwards.
3. A rear seat passenger has the option to use the high mounted switch to control forward movement.
4. To return the seat, pivot the seatback until it locks into its previous position. Push the switch (2) rearwards until the seat stops at its previous position. Alternatively, a rear seat passenger can use button (4).

Note: Previous position can be a memory position or an adjusted position. If the seat is required to move further back and there is still adjustment available, press and hold the switch (2 or 4) again.



Take care not to damage the seat backs while gaining access to the rear seats.

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS



The split fold rear seat of 5 door models can be folded completely, or partially at 60/40 split, to accommodate loads and still retain seating for passengers.

To fold part or all of the seat:

1. First press in the adjusting collar then fully lower the head restraints.

Note: *Adjusting collar positions are dependent on seat position. Right side position, collar at base of right pillar. Left and centre positions, collar on left side.*

2. Press a seat backrest release button, then fold the appropriate backrest fully forward.

Raising a folded seat is a reversal of the folding process.

When the seat back is fully raised and locked into position, the release/locking button will pop up.

Coupe rear seat folding

If a seat fold is required, the smaller part must be folded first. The larger part can then be folded.

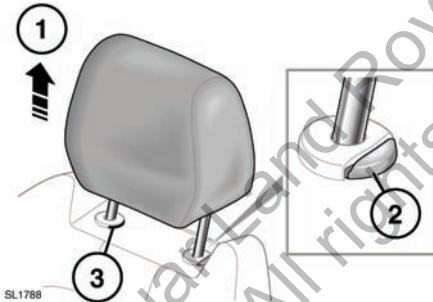
Raising the Coupe folded seats is a reversal of the folding process. Ensure that the release/locking button relocates into the correct position.



Ensure that when the backrest is raised the locking mechanism is fully engaged. If the backrests are not fully locked in place, red markers will be visible around the backrest buttons.

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

-  **Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Do not drive, or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.**
-  **Always store a removed head restraint securely.**



1. Move the head restraint up to the required position.
2. To adjust the restraint downwards, first press in the adjusting collar.
3. To remove a manual head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. Use a tool to press in the locking collar. Lift the restraint out of the seatback.

Note: Head restraints fitted with Rear seat entertainment screens must NOT be removed.

Ensure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the head restraint, ensure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

INTEGRATED HEAD RESTRAINTS

Models with 'sports' front seats have non adjustable and non removable head restraints.

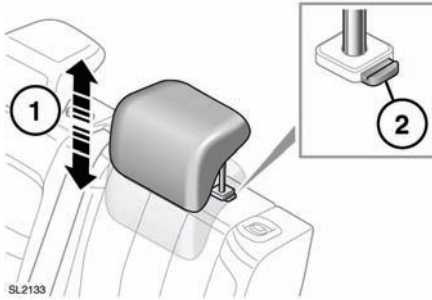
REAR SEAT HEAD RESTRAINTS

-  **Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.**
-  **Always store a removed restraint securely.**
-  **Do not remove head restraints with integrated rear media screens. Any attempt to do so is likely to cause damage.**

Head restraints may be removed, if required (e.g. to fit larger child seats). To remove a head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. With the adjusting collar pressed in, lift the restraint out of the seatback.

To refit a head restraint, ensure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

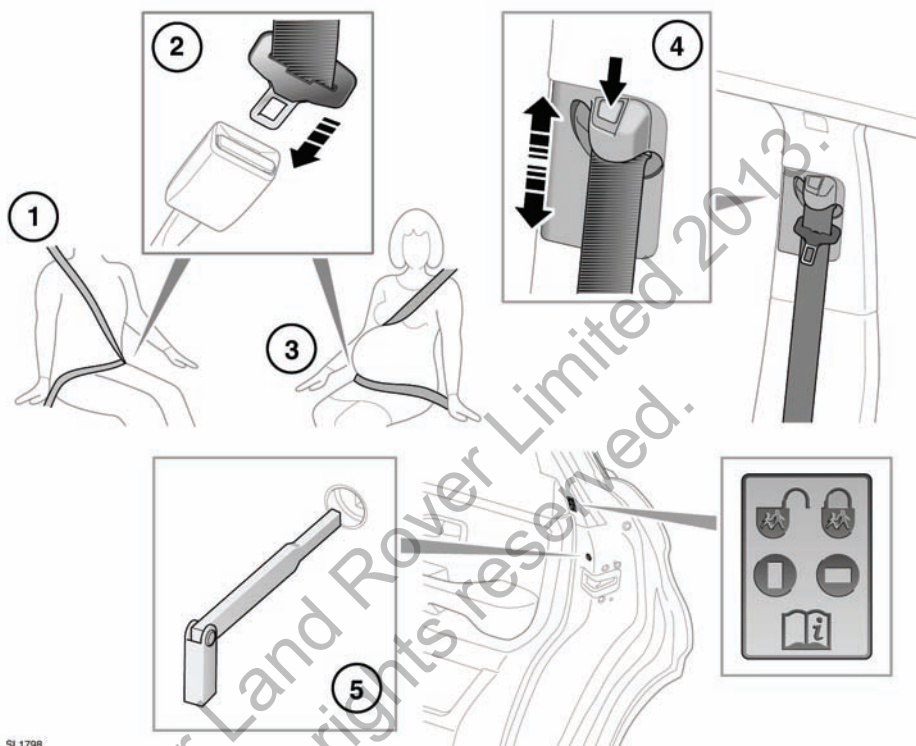
Head restraints



1. To raise, pull the restraint upwards.
2. To lower, press in the adjusting collar and push down on the restraint.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

USING SEAT BELTS AND CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



- 1. Putting on a seat belt:** Draw the belt out smoothly, ensure that the belt height, the seat and your position on the seat, are correct.



WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.



Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.



Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted.



Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



The occupants of the front seats should not travel with the seat back at more than 30 degrees from the upright. Doing so will reduce the protection afforded by the seat belt.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

2. Fastening a seat belt:

With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard.

To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note: When releasing the seat belt it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.

3. Seat belt use during pregnancy:

Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.



Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap whilst using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



Ensure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

4. Seat belt height adjustment:

Press to release the catch.

With the catch depressed move the mechanism slide up or down to the required height. Ensure that the locking mechanism has engaged.

When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of your shoulder.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.



Ensure that the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving.



The use of comfort clips or devices that would create slack in the seat belt system, is not advised.

5. Child safety locks:

If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

To change the child lock settings:-

- Open the door to access the child safety lock.
- Insert the key blade from the Smart Key into the slot and rotate a quarter of a turn to enable or disable the interior door handle as required.

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the SRS to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant.



The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT SAFETY



Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.



The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.



It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.



If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.



Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt.



Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey no matter how short.



Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.



When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, take care to ensure that the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, wear to the webbing and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.

Seat belts

- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT WARNING LAMP



If a front seat belt is not fastened when the vehicle is in motion, a chime will be heard and the seat belt warning lamp will illuminate.

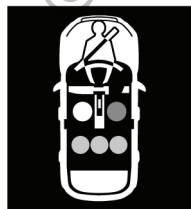
Note: If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.



Always ensure that objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.

BELTMINDER

A front and rear seat Beltminder system warns the driver when the seat belt of an occupied seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.



SL1860

A graphic displayed in the Driver information centre indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey and also when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.

Each seating position is represented by a passenger icon, the colour of which indicates the seat belt status:

- Green - seat belt in the indicated position is fastened.
- Red - seat belt in the indicated position has been unfastened while the vehicle ignition is on. This indicator will turn grey after 30 seconds.
- Grey - seat belt not fastened.

Note: The indicators will be displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, e.g., a seat belt is unfastened or fastened or a door is opened and then closed.

In addition, an audible warning will sound under the following conditions:

- The seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.
- A rear seat belt is unfastened.

Note: If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the Beltminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.

CHILD SEATS



For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rear-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.



Do not use a forward facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.



Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child.



Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.



Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seat back. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national legislation permits this), Land Rover recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint.

- Disable the front passenger airbag. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.
- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion rake adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seat back to the fully upright position.
- Adjust the seat belt adjustable upper anchorage to its lowest position.



Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



SL1545

This symbol, affixed to the end of the fascia on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING



Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.



Information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest recommendation.

Note: The information contained in the following table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight not age should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

Note: The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.

Mass group.	0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months	I = 9-18 kg (20-40 lb) 9 months to 4 years	II = 15-25 kg (33-55 lb) 4-9 years	III = 22-36 kg (49-80 lb) 8-12 years
Seating positions					
Front passenger*	U*	U*	U*	U*	U*
Rear outboard	U	U	U	U	U
Rear centre	U	U	U	U	U

U = Suitable for universal category restraints approved for this mass group.

* Always ensure that the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in

this seating position. See **37, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**. The seat back needs to be adjusted to the fully upright position.

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size/age	Recommended seat
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax Kid Plus

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle observe the following:-

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the restraint system manufacturers instructions.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every trip.
- Ensure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX seat.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.



WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS (not Australia)



Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.



If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

Both of the outer seat positions on the rear seat are equipped to accept ISOFIX restraints.



This symbol is shown on a label sewn into the seats to indicate the position of the ISOFIX lower

anchorage.

ISOFIX CHILD SEAT POSITIONING (not Australia)

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Size classes	Fixtures	Rear outboard seats
Carry-cot	F/G	ISO L1/L2	X
0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months	E	ISO R1	IL*
0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months	C/D/E	ISO R1/R2/R3	IL*
I = 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb) 9 months - 4 years	C/D A/B1/B	ISO R2/R3 ISO F2/F2X/F3	X IUF
II = 15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb) 4-9 years	N/A	N/A	N/A
III = 22 to 36 kg (49 to 80 lb) 8-12 years	N/A	N/A	N/A

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.

* = Child seat suitable for use in these locations, is the Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

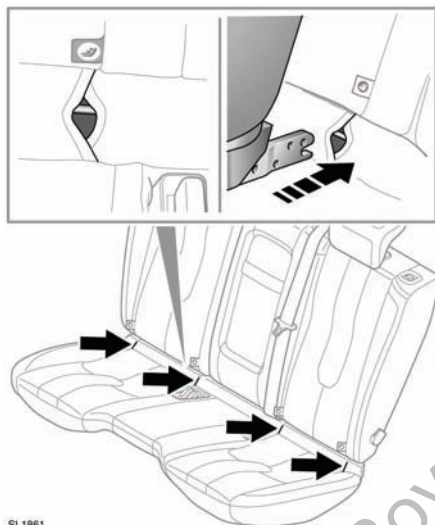
Note: The information contained in the table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats seek advice from your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

Note: ISOFIX anchorages are provided for second row outer seating positions. ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached following the manufacturers instructions at these locations only.

BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat but is still too small to safely use just the three point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS (not Australia)



SL1861

To install an ISOFIX child seat:-

1. Locate the ISOFIX locking mechanism.
2. Slide the child seat into the locking mechanism.
3. If an upper tether is fitted to the child seat, ensure it is properly secured to the upper tether anchorages on the rear of the seats.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should still check the anchor points visually, to ensure correct attachment.

Note: Always ensure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

TETHER ANCHORAGE POINTS (Australia only)



WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.



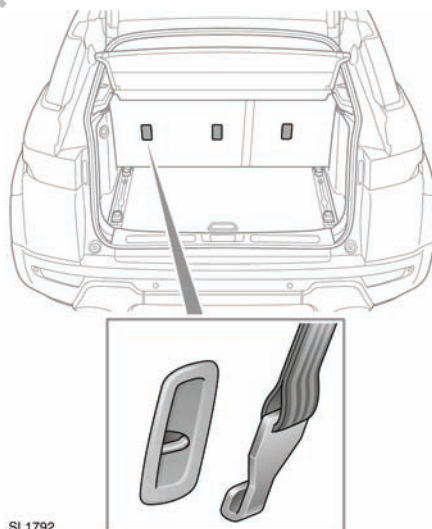
Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.



When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seat back and beneath the head restraint.



If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).



SL1792

Your vehicle may be equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seat frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

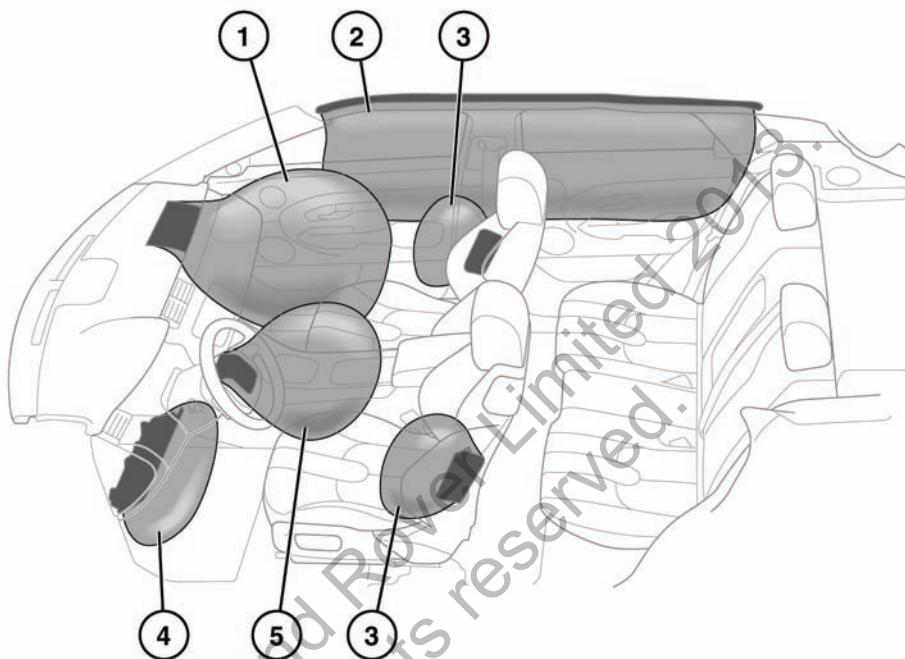
Note: A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat.

ATTACHING TETHER ANCHORAGE STRAPS

1. Install the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seat back and beneath the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Ensure that the tether strap hook is facing the correct way.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



SL1772

1. Front passenger's airbag
2. Curtain airbags
3. Side airbags
4. Knee-bolster airbag
5. Driver's airbag

Note: The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.

Always contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.

- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.
- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.

AIRBAG OPERATION



For the airbags to operate correctly the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair.



Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of their person, or any objects, in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. Only use approved accessories (e.g. seat covers).



Ensure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat mounted side airbags.



Airbags inflate at high speeds. To minimise the risk of injury, ensure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as practical.



Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.



Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons familiar with the operation of and requirements for, vehicles fitted with SRS. If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised repairer.

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The Supplementary Restraint System components include:-

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.

- Airbag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners (front seats).
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash sensors.
- Airbag wiring harness.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:-

- Any part of an occupants body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material, covering seat mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Land Rover, or specifically designed for use with seat mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to ensure that the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

Note: *The airbags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:*

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.



High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.



The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

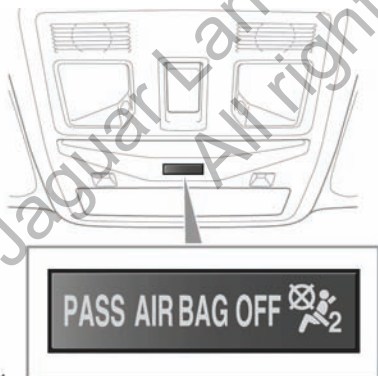
DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

(Not Australia or Japan)

-  Crash test data and statistics show that the safest place for a child to be restrained is in a child seat correctly fitted to the vehicle's rear seat.
-  Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.
-  Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the SRS warning light illuminates continuously with the ignition on.

Note: The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.

Airbag disable/enable is achieved via the steering wheel settings menu. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**



SL1814



As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be turned on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.



When checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, ensure that the ignition is switched on.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags are able to deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the airbags inflate fully to stage two giving maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full inflation may not be required, so the airbags will only inflate to stage one. The knee bolster airbag will always fully inflate.

SIDE AIRBAGS

These are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

CURTAIN AIRBAGS

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries. They deflate at a slower rate than the front or side airbags.

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS



When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. If breathing difficulty is experienced, leave the vehicle if possible or open the windows or doors to allow fresh air in.



Airbags inflate at high speed and can cause injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, ensure that all occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats and position the seats as far back as is practicable.



Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.



After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP



The airbag warning lamp is displayed in the instrument pack and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is turned on.



If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on.

- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being turned on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time other than the bulb check, when the ignition is on.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION



Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.



Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

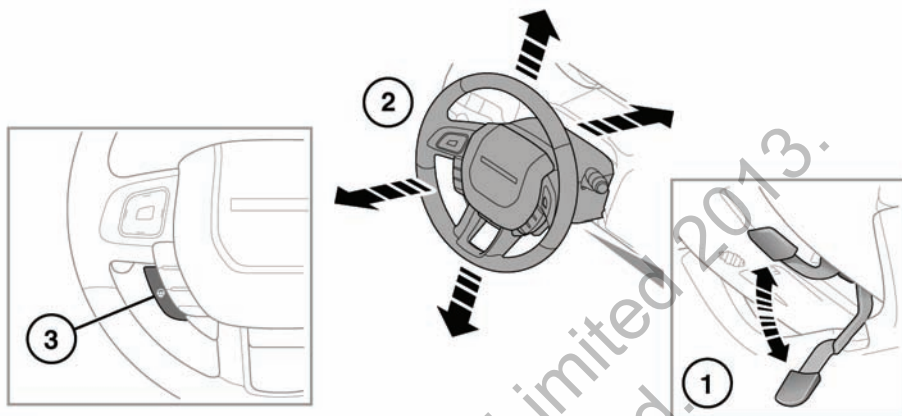
All of the following operations should be carried out only by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified person:-

- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Installation of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



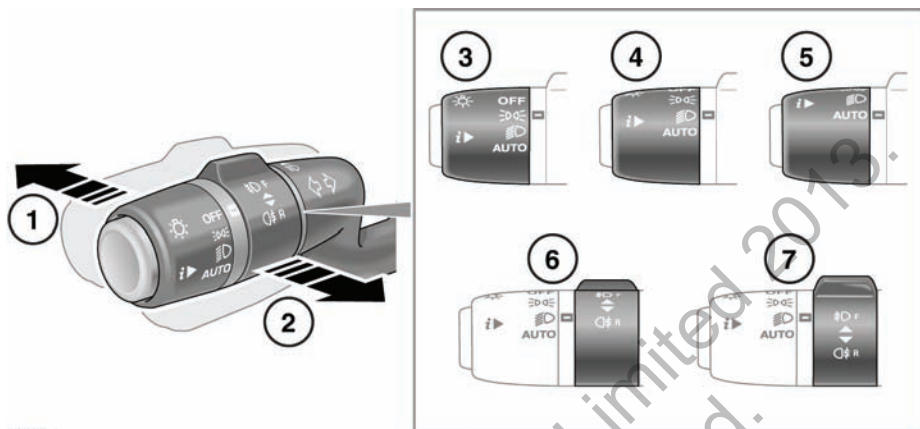
SL2152



Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion.

1. Move the lever fully down to unlock the column. Move the lever fully up to re-lock the column.
2. Move the steering column up, down, in or out, to the desired position.
3. Press to switch on the steering wheel heating. Press again to turn off.

LIGHTING CONTROL



SL1727

1. With the headlamps on, push the control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The instrument pack warning lamp will illuminate.

Note: Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.

2. Pull the control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam will remain on for as long as the switch is held.
3. Sidelights.
4. Headlamps.
5. **AUTO.** With Auto lamps selected, when ambient light fades and the ignition is on, the side lamps, tail lamps, low beam headlamps and licence plate lamps will switch on automatically. Headlamp courtesy delay, High beam assist and Windscreen wipers detection may also be activated.

Note: Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause Auto lamps to activate.

6. Rear fog lamps. Will operate only while sidelights, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release. The instrument pack warning lamp will illuminate.
7. Front fog lamps. Will operate only while sidelights, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release. The instrument pack warning lamp will illuminate.

In the event of a bulb failure, it should be noted that some bulbs are replaceable only by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer. See **187**, **CHANGING A BULB**.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

Daytime running lamps are LED lamps.

With the lighting control in the OFF position or in AUTO position while lighting conditions do not require headlamps on, then daytime running lamps will switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.

- The gear selector is out of park (automatic transmission).
- The parking brake is not applied - market dependent.



Unless required or prohibited by law, daytime running lamps can be disabled or enabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

HEADLAMP COURTESY DELAY

This feature operates whenever the lamps master switch is in the AUTO (5) position and the ignition is turned off. The headlamps will remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

Note: The time delay may be changed via the Vehicle settings menu. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

Courtesy lamps can be switched off at any time by pressing the headlamps button on the Smart Key.

HIGH BEAM ASSIST

This feature of the Xenon lighting automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

Note: It is not recommended that High beam assist is used while driving off road.

For High beam assist to become operational, the main lighting switch must be in the AUTO position (5), with low beam headlamps selected.

High beam assist will activate only when the vehicle speed exceeds 40km/h (25mph). The system will deactivate when vehicle speed drops below 24km/h (15mph).

To manually select high beam, move the stalk to the high beam position as normal. To return to High beam assist, move the stalk back to the central position.

To manually override to low beam from high beam, pull the stalk to the flash position (2) and High beam assist will be cancelled. To return to High beam assist, push the stalk to the high beam position (1) and then return it to the central position.



A green lamp in the instrument pack illuminates when High beam assist is selected.

To turn off High beam assist, turn the main lighting control from Auto to headlamps.

This feature can be disabled/enabled via the Vehicle settings menu. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

Note: The following may affect the operation of High beam assist:-

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Vehicles with dim headlamps.
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Dirty sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.

Note: The system cannot be relied upon to activate or de-activate high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to ensure correct use of the headlamps at all times.

Note: Ensure that the forward facing sensors on the back of the rear view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If Auto lamps is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lamps, tail lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lamps will automatically switch off two minutes later.

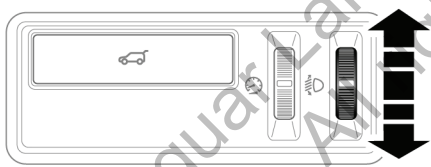
HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

Misting of lamp lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. This will not affect the performance of the lamps and will clear during normal operation.

HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

The headlamp beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

HEADLAMP LEVELLING (HALOGEN ONLY)



SL1779

Use the headlamp levelling control to account for vehicle loading changes.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver and front seat passenger	0
Driver and passengers in all seats	Rotate down one notch.
Maximum gross vehicle weight	Rotate down two notches.
Maximum rear axle load	Rotate down three notches.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

With the headlamps on, AFS will adjust the beams when cornering to provide improved illumination in the direction of travel.

AFS is deactivated when:-

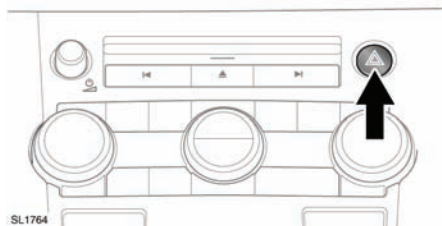
- Reverse gear is selected.
- The vehicle is stationary.

If a system fault is detected the headlamps will attempt to move to the central position and then remain stationary. The AFS warning indicator will illuminate to indicate that a fault is present.



If the warning lamp illuminates, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

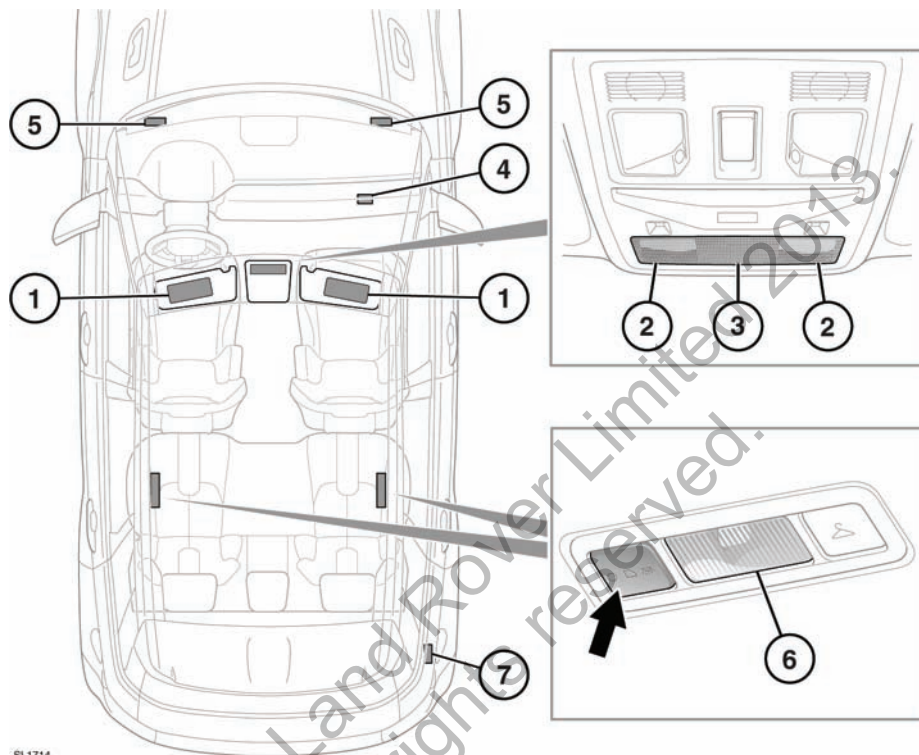


Press to turn the hazard warning lamps on. Press again to turn off. When the hazard warning lamps are operating, the direction indicator warning lamps will flash in time with the hazard warning lamps.

Note: Hazard warning lamps can be used when the ignition is on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

INTERIOR LIGHTS LOCATIONS



SL1714

1. Sun visor lamps. Illuminate when the vanity mirror is opened.
2. Map reading lamps. Move a finger close to (or touch) the relevant lens to switch on/off.

Note: If you are wearing gloves, it may be necessary to touch the lens to operate the lamps.

3. Front interior lamp. Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Move a finger close to (or touch) the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the lens for two seconds to deactivate/activate automatic illumination.
4. Glove box lamp. Illuminates when the glove box is opened.
5. Footwell lamps. Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked.

6. Rear interior/reading lamps. Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Press the switch to switch on and off manually. Touch the front courtesy lamp lens for approximately 2 seconds to deactivate/activate automatic illumination of the rear interior lamps.
7. Luggage compartment lamp. Illuminates when the tailgate is opened.

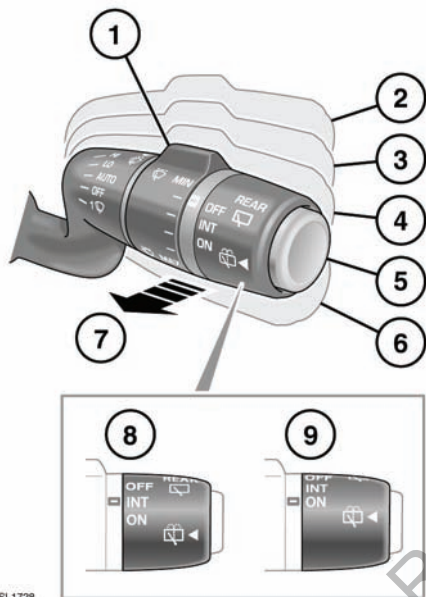
INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

While the exterior lamps are turned on, intensity of interior lights can be adjusted. See **272, CONTROLS**, Interior illumination control.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

The LED ambient lighting can be adjusted for colour and intensity via the touch screen. The exterior lamps must be turned on while changes are being made via the touch screen. See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**, Extra features.

WIPER OPERATION



1. Rotate the collar to adjust the intermittent period. The intermittent delay period will vary and is controlled by either vehicle speed or a rain sensor. The control must be in position (4) to be operational.



This is a dealer configurable option.

2. High speed wipe.
3. Low speed wipe.
4. In this position intermittent wipe is controlled by either a rain sensor or vehicle speed. The rain sensor located at the upper edge of the windscreen becomes active and will determine when the wipers are required to operate. If the rain sensor is not enabled by your dealer, intermittent wipe

will operate in conjunction with the setting of control (1).



This function can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

5. Rear window wash/wipe:
 - Press and hold to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper will operate for two further wipes after the button is released. After a few seconds a drip wipe process will clear any residual water.
6. Single wipe of windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
7. Windscreen wash/wipe:
 - Pull and hold to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for three further wipes after the stalk is released. After a few seconds a drip wipe will clear any residual water.
8. INT - rear wiper, intermittent operation.
The intermittent delay period is controlled by adjusting the collar (1). The delay period and number of wipes will then be adjusted automatically depending on vehicle speed.



This is a dealer configurable option.

9. ON - rear wiper, continuous operation.



Do not operate the windscreen wipers on a dry screen.



In freezing or very hot conditions, ensure that the wipers have not stuck to the glass. Use the Winter park position and lift the wiper blades away from the screen.



Remove any snow, ice or frost from the screen, around the wiper arms and blades and the screen scuttle, before operating the wipers.

Note: Front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open and vehicle speed is below 3km/h (1.9mph).

Note: If wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out will temporarily halt wiper operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the ignition. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.

RAIN SENSOR



Ensure that the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the rain sensitive wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

The rain sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of rain/dirt/snow on the windscreen and automatically activates the windscreen wipers accordingly. Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up, use a single wipe to clear the screen.

To activate the rain sensitivity wipers, move the wiper stalk to the rain sensor position (4). A single wipe will be actioned.

Adjust the rain sensitivity collar (1) as required. Increasing sensitivity while position (4) is selected will action a single wipe.

If a front door is opened while the wipers are operating, the wipers will be disabled. Operation will restart when the doors are closed again.

SPEED-DEPENDENT WIPERS

If vehicle speed drops below 6km/h (3.7mph) with the wipers operating in positions (2) or (3), the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When vehicle speed increases to over 6km/h (3.7mph), the original wiper speed setting is restored automatically.

DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe function is configured, the wipers will operate four seconds after a wash/wipe cycle has finished, to clear any remaining drips from the windscreen.



This function can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

WIPERS WINTER PARK POSITION

The wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. This allows the wiper blades to be lifted from the screen to prevent freezing. The 'Wipers winter park' option can be selected from the settings menu. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

The optional headlamp power wash operates automatically with the windscreen wash and will operate only if the headlamps are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.

Headlamp wash operates every fourth operation of the screen washers, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately ten minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

Switching the headlamps or ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle.

See **204, WASHER FLUID TOPPING UP**.

Note: The headlamps are washed alternately to prevent the washer fluid from reducing the light output from both headlamps simultaneously.

REAR WIPER

If reverse gear is selected while the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper will start automatically and continue as long as reverse gear is selected. The wipe interval is dependent on the front wipers setting.

If reverse gear is selected while the rear wiper control is in the INT position, the wiper will operate for a single sweep of the rear screen.

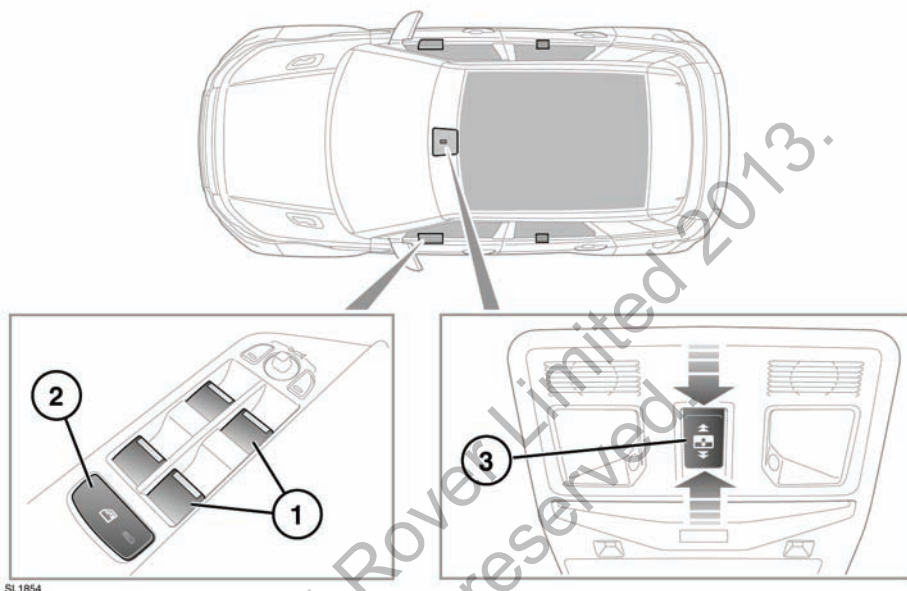
When stationary, if the tailgate is opened while the rear wiper is operating, the wiper will stop. When the tailgate is closed, the wiper will start to operate again after a delay of three seconds.

If the tailgate is open and vehicle speed is above 3km/h (2mph) the wiper will operate normally.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

This subject is covered in the Maintenance section. See **193, WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT**.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS AND PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND



SL1854



To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart Key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

1. Briefly pull a switch fully up and release, the window will continue to rise until fully closed. Briefly press a switch fully down and release, the window will continue to lower until fully open. Pressing or pulling a switch again will stop the window.

The windows will operate for five minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

Rear windows have a short drop feature for passenger comfort. The first press of a switch will lower the window a short distance to give a flow of air. A second

press will lower the window to its full extent.

Note: Coupe models have fixed rear windows and a different switch pack.

2. Rear window isolator switch.

The rear windows are isolated when the indicator light in the switch is illuminated.



If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows. If the windows are operated by young children there is a risk of serious injury or death.

3. Roof blind open/close switch:

To open the blind: Push from the rear of the switch and release. The blind will slide fully open.

To close the blind: Push from the front of the switch to the first position and release. The blind will fully close.

A further press will stop movement of the blind.

Alternatively, push from the front of the switch to the second position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position, then release.

WINDOW RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted, the windows must be reset.

Once the power supply is restored, reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for one second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION



Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.



Before closing a window or the roof blind, ensure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur.

Anti-trap protection will stop window or roof blind movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or roof blind and its aperture and remove any obstructions (e.g. ice, etc.).

If it is still necessary to raise the window, the override procedure is as follows:

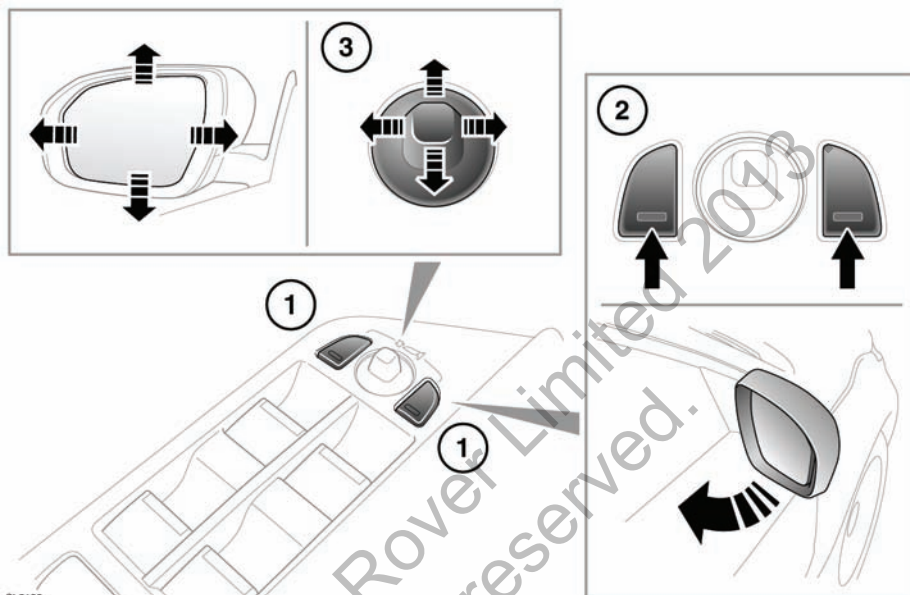
1. Attempt to close the window, anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window slightly.
2. Within ten seconds attempt to raise the window again, anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time hold the switch in the close position. Hold until closed.

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset.*

RESONANCE WITH LOWERED WINDOWS

If a resonance or booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25mm (1 inch) will eliminate the condition.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS



1. Mirror selector switches. Press to select the left or right mirror.
2. Press both selector switches together to fold/unfold the mirrors (power fold option).
3. Mirror adjustment switch. Move up/down/left or right to adjust the mirror glass position.

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is on and for up to five minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Note: Powerfold will operate only if vehicle speed is below 113km/h (70 mph).

Note: The rear view door mirror heaters operate automatically according to the external temperature and windscreen wiper operation.

Note: An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head will be disengaged from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold then unfold the mirror using the switch.

Note: A thermal cut-out which will temporarily disable the powerfold feature if the switches are operated repeatedly.

AUTOMATIC POWERFOLD MIRRORS

Powerfold mirrors can be configured to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when unlocked.



This function can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: If the powerfold mirrors were folded using the switches, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

If the vehicle is equipped with memory seats, when reverse gear is selected the door mirrors can be set to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle of the curb side for reversing. The **Reverse-dip mirror** feature must be switched on. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

The exact dipped position can be adjusted while the mirrors are dipped;

1. With the ignition on, select reverse gear.
2. With the mirror adjust controls, adjust to the desired dip position.
3. Select neutral (N) gear. This will store your setting for future use.

The next time reverse is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of reverse, the mirrors will return to their previous position.

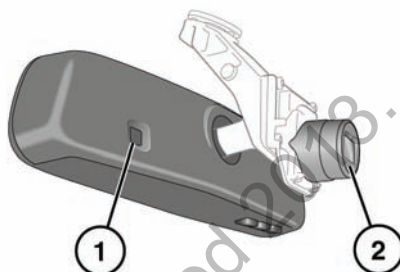
Note: If vehicle speed exceeds 7km/h (4mph) in reverse, the mirrors will return to their normal driving position for enhanced visibility.

HEATED MIRRORS

The rear view door mirror heaters operate automatically according to the external temperature and windscreen wiper operation.

INTERIOR MIRROR

Auto dimming mirror



SL1896

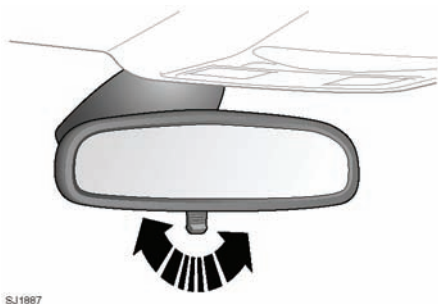
1. Ambient light sensor.
2. High beam assist sensor.

Interior mirror dimming will adjust automatically according to the amount of ambient light when the ignition is on. If reverse gear is selected, the automatic dimming feature is turned off to allow maximum visibility for reversing.

Note: Ensure that the forward facing sensors (1) and (2) on the back of the rear view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

Note: If the mirror becomes detached from the windscreen it should be reattached by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: If the rear screen is obscured, or the light falling on the mirror is reduced by an obstruction, the automatic dimming feature may not operate correctly.

Manual dimming mirror

SJ1987

To dim the light levels reflected by the mirror, push the lever forward. To return it to normal light levels, pull the lever back.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

-  The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.
-  Please note that BSM may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind or vehicles that are being overtaken rapidly.
-  BSM may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects, such as roadside barriers, etc.



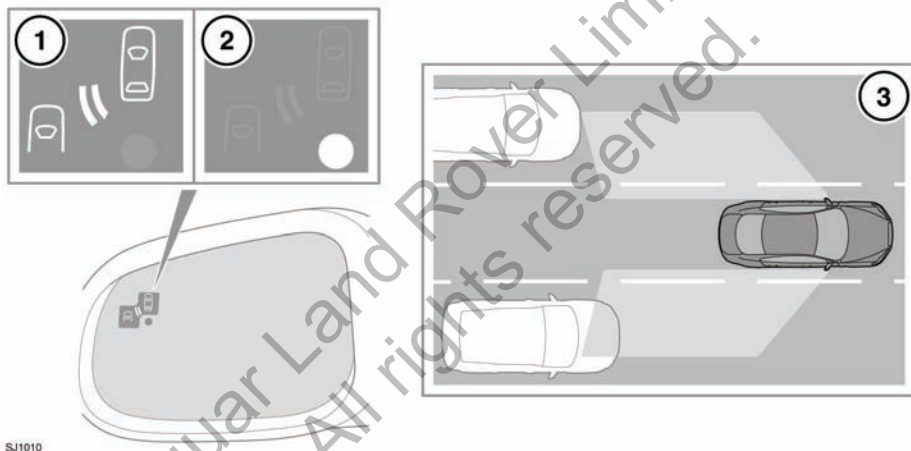
The radar sensors may be impaired by rain, snow or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle/object within the blind spot.



Ensure that the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.



Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumpers, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



SJ1010

The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, that is not easily visible by the driver and is designed to identify any object overtaking the vehicle (3). The system uses a radar on each side of the vehicle to identify any overtaking vehicle/object within the blind spot area of the vehicle, while disregarding other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.

If an object is identified by the system as being an overtaking vehicle/object, an amber warning indicator icon (1) illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror, to alert the driver that there is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 6mtr (20ft) behind the rear wheels, and up to 2.5mtr (8.2ft) from the side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane).

Note: *This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

Note: *The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

BSM is activated when the ignition is switched on, at which point it performs a self-check, during which the warning icons in the exterior mirrors will illuminate for a short period of time. The system actively monitors when the vehicle is travelling at more than 16km/h (10mph) in a forward gear.

The amber warning indicator dot (2) remains illuminated until forward vehicle speed exceeds 16km/h (10mph).

BSM is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane highways. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

Note: *If an overtaking vehicle is detected on both sides of the vehicle simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will illuminate.*

Note: *BSM is automatically turned off when reverse (R) gear is selected, when the vehicle is in park (P), the vehicle is travelling below 16km/h (10mph). Under these conditions, the warning indicator dot in the exterior mirrors is displayed.*

BSM SENSOR BLOCKAGE

If one of the sensors is completely obscured the BSM system is automatically disabled, the warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BSM sensor blocked** appears in the Driver information centre.

Note: *Blockage testing is only initiated when vehicle speed is above 32km/h (20mph) and will take at least two minutes of accumulated driving above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.*

If the sensors become blocked, please check the rear bumper sensors and that they are clear of ice, frost and dirt.

Note: *The BSM system is inoperative while a trailer is attached and the trailer socket is used.*

BSM SYSTEM FAULT

If a fault with one of the radar sensors is detected, an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BSM not available** is displayed in the Driver information centre.

Note: *Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault in the system occurs, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

HOMELINK® TRANSCIVER



Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards.



When programming the transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, ensure the area is clear. This will prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programme.



This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.

This feature is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver. See **58, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

The HomeLink transceiver is located in the rear view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters, which can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems or other radio frequency operated devices.

Although this section mainly describes the procedures for a garage door opener, it equally applies to the previously mentioned applications.

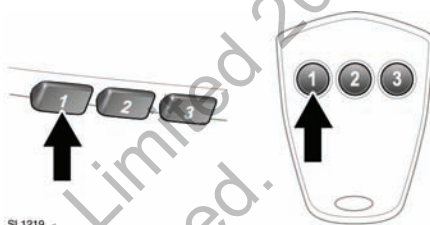
BEFORE PROGRAMMING



When programming a device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter (cycle), unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible motor failure.

For best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter of the garage door opener (or other device) before programming. If your garage door opener receiver (located in the garage) is equipped with an antenna, ensure that the antenna is hanging straight down.

PROGRAMMING



With the engine switched off;

1. Ensure that the ignition system is on.
2. Hold the signal emitting end of the original garage door opener hand-held transmitter 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the HomeLink transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink button, as shown above, and the hand-held transmitter button. Keep both buttons pressed. The indicator lamp will flash slowly at first and then change to a fast flash. When the indicator lamp flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing lamp indicates successful programming.
4. If, after 60 seconds, the indicator lamp does not flash rapidly, release both the HomeLink and the hand-held transmitter buttons and repeat the procedure starting with Step 2. Position the hand-held transmitter at a different angle and/or distance.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink opener button and observe the indicator lamp.
 - If the indicator is continuous, programming is complete and your device should operate when the HomeLink opener button is pressed and held for approximately 1 to 2 seconds and then released.
 - If the indicator lamp blinks rapidly for two seconds and then illuminates continuously, proceed with the following programming instructions for rolling code device equipment.

ROLLING CODE DEVICE EQUIPMENT PROGRAMMING

Note: The assistance of a second person, may make the following steps quicker and easier. Once the button has been pressed there are only 30 seconds in which to complete Step 3.

1. At the garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) in the garage, locate the learn or smart button/switch.
 - The name of the button or switch may vary between manufacturers.
2. Press and release the learn or smart button.
3. In your vehicle, firmly press the previously programmed HomeLink opener button twice and release.
4. Press and hold briefly to complete the programming process.

HomeLink should now activate the rolling code device.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To programme a device to a previously programmed button:

1. Press and hold the desired pre-programmed HomeLink button for at least 20 seconds, but no longer than 30 seconds, until the indicator lamp begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the button, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the HomeLink transceiver, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Carry out Step 3 of **Programming**.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

For first time programming, ensure that the engine is switched off:

1. Ensure that the ignition is on (but with the engine switched off).
2. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons. Keep the buttons pressed until the indicator lamp begins to flash (this will take approximately 20 seconds), then release the buttons.

All memories in HomeLink have now been cleared.

Note: Do not perform this procedure when programming the additional garage door opener buttons.

ENTRY GATE PROGRAMMING

The technology of some entry gates requires you to press and re-press (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds during programming.

Continue to press and hold the desired HomeLink button while you cycle your hand-held transmitter until the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE



It is recommended that when you sell or dispose of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink buttons be erased for security purposes.

For information on the range of available compatible products or accessories, or for assistance, you should contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

You can also contact the supplier's helpline on **0 0800 0466 354 65**. This toll-free number can be called from anywhere within Europe. No separate country code is required (the first zero is not required when calling from within Germany).

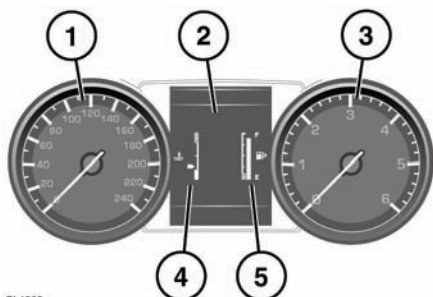
Contact can also be made via the internet. The website address is www.eurohomelink.com. The e-mail address is:

info@eurohomelink.com.

Note: Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

Note: The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

INSTRUMENT PANEL



SL1862

1. Speedometer.
2. Driver Information Centre (message centre).
3. Tachometer.
4. Temperature gauge

! Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

If the pointer moves onto the red line the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Note: If engine overheating occurs, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the air conditioning may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with cooling.

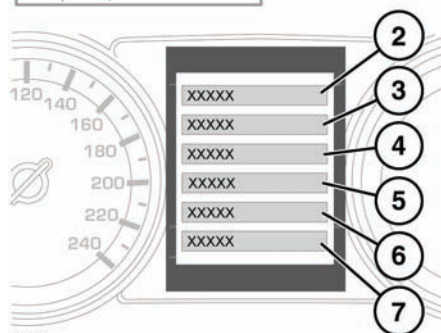
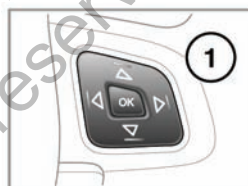
5. Fuel gauge.

! Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. The resultant misfire can seriously damage the catalytic converter.

If the amber low fuel warning lamp illuminates, the vehicle should be refuelled as soon as possible. The approximate distance that can be travelled on the remaining fuel can be viewed via the trip computer range function.

As a reminder for the location of the fuel filler, there is an arrow head next to the fuel pump symbol pointing to the relevant side of the vehicle.

VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU



SL1863

A number of vehicle features and display settings may be configured via the vehicle information and settings menu.

To display and navigate through the vehicle information and settings menu, operate the menu control on the steering wheel.

1. Steering wheel menu control.
 - Press the up/down arrows to scroll through a list. The current selection will be highlighted.
 - Press the right arrow to view a sub list.
 - Press the left arrow to return to the previous menu.
 - Press the **OK** button to select the highlighted item.
2. Select to close or return to main menu.
3. Select to view all active warning messages.
4. Select to access the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. The following features can be personalised:



Before making any changes to the vehicle set-up, you must ensure that you have read and fully understood the relevant sections of the handbook. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

- Blind spot monitor.
 - Speed warning.
 - High beam assist.
 - Passenger airbag.
 - Alarm sensors.
 - Cruise Eco data
 - Reverse-dip mirrors.
 - Easy entry/exit.
 - 2-stage locking.
 - Audible lock warning
 - Winter wiper park.
 - Drive-away locking.
 - Headlamp delay.
5. Select to access the **Trip Computer** menu.

6. Select to access the **Display Settings** menu. The following features can be personalised:
 - Language for Driver information centre display.
 - Temperature units.
 - Appearance of the instrument panel.
7. Select to access the vehicle **Service Menu**. Can be accessed only when the engine is not running.

Note: Some personalisation options may not be available in all markets.

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES



Do not ignore warning messages. Take appropriate action and, when necessary, seek qualified assistance before driving the vehicle.

If more than one message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds in order of priority.

***Note:** Driver information centre messages and their meanings, are detailed where necessary within the appropriate subject sections.*

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey or series of journeys until it is reset to zero.

The displayed information is for guidance only, as it can be affected by traffic, road and weather conditions.

Three independent memories are available, A, B and Auto. A and B memories can be reset independently, while the Auto trip will reset after every ignition cycle as the vehicle moves.

Trip computer information is displayed on the instrument panel.



SL1778

Press the **TRIP** button on the end of the left column stalk repeatedly to display the trip data in the following order:

- Date and odometer.

- Trip distance.
- Average speed.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel economy.
- Range.
- Blank.

To reset the displayed trip data, press and hold the **TRIP** button.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9 999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

This shows the predicted distance, miles or kilometres, that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption stay constant.

METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The display of metric, imperial or mixed units is selected via the instrument panel menu.

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

The service interval message will only be displayed when the vehicle has less than 3200 km (2000 miles) before the service is due.

When the ignition is switched on, and the vehicle has started its service countdown, **SERVICE REQ'D XXXX km (XXXX MLS) / XX DAYS** is displayed in the Driver information centre.

When the service distance has been reached, **SERVICE REQUIRED** is displayed in the Driver information centre.



If no service interval indicator is displayed during the vehicle service cycle, make sure that your vehicle is serviced in accordance with the intervals, as stated in the Service Portfolio.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

WARNING LAMPS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately.

Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

AMBER and **YELLOW** warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

GREEN and **BLUE** lamps within the instrument panel indicate system status, such as green for direction indicators, when in operation and blue for high beam.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed on the Driver information centre.

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g. high beam headlamps and direction indicators).*

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the Driver information centre.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started. If the lamp remains on, flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and then switch off the engine immediately. Check the oil level.

Seek qualified assistance before starting the engine.

BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits.

If the message **CHECK BRAKE FLUID** is displayed, check the brake fluid level and top-up if necessary.

If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

PARKING BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates when the parking brake is applied. If the lamp illuminates and **Caution! Park Brake Applied** is displayed, the vehicle is moving with the parking brake applied. Release the parking brake or stop the vehicle.

If the lamp flashes, there is a fault and the parking brake cannot be applied. Seek qualified assistance.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started. If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system.

Seek qualified assistance urgently.

SEAT BELT (RED)



Illuminates when the ignition is on and an occupied front seat belt is unbuckled. The lamp will extinguish after sixty seconds or when the relevant seat belt(s) is buckled. In some markets a warning chime will sound while the lamp is illuminated.

Note: In some markets, the lamp will remain illuminated until the seat belts of occupied front seats are fastened correctly.

ENGINE MALFUNCTION (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp flashes or illuminates at any other time, there is a fault with the engine.

Avoid high speeds and seek qualified assistance urgently.

GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the Driver information centre.

BRAKE (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system. The vehicle can still be driven with care, but avoid heavy brake application.

Seek qualified assistance urgently.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started. If the lamp flashes while driving, the DSC system is active. If the lamp illuminates continuously while driving, there is a fault with the DSC system. The vehicle can still be driven, but the DSC system will not activate under wheel spin or slide conditions.

Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when DSC is switched off.

Deactivating DSC also reduces the level of Electronic Traction Control intervention and may lead to an increase in wheel spin.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application.

Seek qualified assistance urgently.

AIRBAG (AMBER)

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started. If the lamp illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the airbag system.

Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING (AMBER)

Illuminates when there is a fault. The headlamps will still operate, but without this feature operating correctly.

Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)

Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on to indicate that the glow plugs are active. Wait until the lamp extinguishes before starting the engine.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)

Illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)

Illuminates when HDC is selected and HDC operating conditions are met. If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met (e.g. vehicle speed is too high) or HDC fade-out is occurring.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)

Illuminates when cruise control is active.

SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)

Illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)

Illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)

The appropriate warning lamp will flash when the direction indicators are operated.

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp will flash in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

HIGH BEAM ASSIST (GREEN)



Illuminates when the High beam assist feature is enabled.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



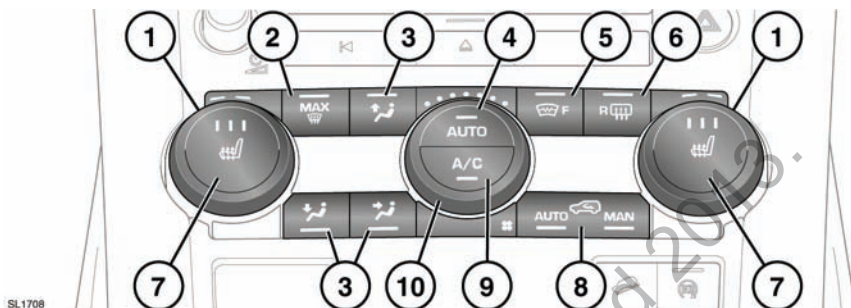
Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

ECO STOP/START (GREEN)



Illuminates when the Stop/Start system is activated. The engine will automatically switch off when the vehicle comes to a stop, neutral is selected and the clutch is fully released.

CONTROLS



1. Temperature controls. For individual driver/passenger settings.
2. Maximum defrost programme.
3. Air distribution. An LED will illuminate in the selected switches.

Note: More than one setting may be selected at a time to achieve the desired distribution.

4. AUTO mode. For fully automatic operation.
5. Heated windscreen.
6. Heated rear screen.
7. Front seat heaters.
8. Recirculation. Press repeatedly to cycle through options.
9. Air conditioning.
10. Blower speed control. In manual mode current speed selection is indicated by illuminated LED's.

Note: The indicator lamps in the switches will illuminate when the function is selected.

Note: In low temperatures it is advisable to close the centre face level vent and direct air flow from the outer face level vents towards the side windows. This will help to keep the windows clear of ice.

Timed climate controls the optional auxiliary heater and can be set in the touch screen. See **69, TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL.**

AUTO

AUTO mode should be used as the normal operating mode. The air conditioning, heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.

To resume fully automatic operation at any time, press the **AUTO** button.

TEMPERATURE CONTROLS

Rotate to set a temperature.

Note: The maximum possible temperature differential between the driver and passenger settings is 4°C (7°F).

MAXIMUM DEFROST

Press to remove frost or heavy misting from the front screen. The system will adjust the front blower output for maximum clearing. In addition the rear screen and optional front screen heaters will be activated.

Press again to switch off defrost mode. The screen heaters will remain on.

HEATED SCREENS

Press to operate the required screen heater. The screen heater(s) will operate for a predetermined timed period before automatically switching off.



Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the screen.

HEATED SEATS

Press the relevant button to operate the required seat heater at high level. Three indicators will illuminate.

Press a second time to heat the seat at a medium level. Two indicators will illuminate.

Press a third time to heat the seat at the lowest level. One indicator will illuminate.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

Note: *Seat heaters consume a great amount of battery power. They will operate only when the engine is running.*

RECIRCULATION

- Press briefly to activate timed recirculation. The button indicator illuminates when recirculation is on.
- Press and hold the button to activate latched recirculation. The button indicator will flash and then illuminate constantly.
- To cancel recirculation, press the button briefly.

Note: *Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*

With pollution and humidity sensing;

- Press the AUTO button briefly to activate timed recirculation. The AUTO LED will illuminate. The system automatically selects fresh and recirculated air

dependent on pollution and cabin humidity.

- Press and hold the AUTO button to activate latched recirculation. The AUTO LED will flash and then illuminate constantly.
- Press the MAN button briefly. The MAN LED will illuminate. Recirculation mode is selected permanently.
- To cancel recirculation, press a button briefly.

WATER DEPOSITS

The climate control system removes moisture from the air and deposits the excess water beneath the vehicle. Puddles may form but this is normal and is no cause for concern.

AUXILIARY HEATER

Your vehicle may be fitted with an auxiliary heater which is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The heater operates only at low ambient temperatures and is controlled by the Timed climate control system or the heater remote control.

When the heater is operating exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible under the front of the vehicle. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

The auxiliary heater is also operated to warm the engine and aid starting in very cold conditions.

Note: *While the engine is being warmed, heat will not be directed to the vehicle interior.*



Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.



Do not operate the auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes which may cause unconsciousness or death.

TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL

Timed climate can provide a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of driver and passenger entering. Dependent on the external temperature, the system either draws in fresh air to cool the cabin or operates an auxiliary heater to warm it.

Control is from the touch screen or from a remote control.

SETTING A TIME FOR TIMED CLIMATE OPERATION

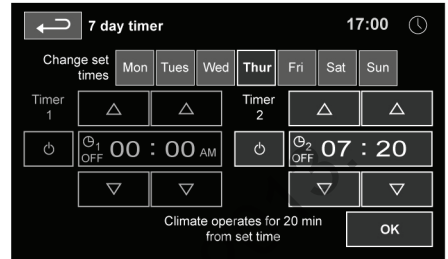
Via the touch screen;

The touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

The system can be programmed to operate up to seven days in advance and once or twice in any 24 hour period. If the vehicle is used each day the system will continue to operate each day until cancelled. If the vehicle is not used for 24 hours, this cycle will be cancelled.

When the system is operating, the LED in the climate control **AUTO** button will flash.

Note: The system will cease operation if the engine is started.



SL2122

To set a timed climate program:

1. Press the **HOME MENU** hard key.
2. Touch the **Timed Climate** soft key. This soft key may be set on a personal shortcut or accessed via the **Extra Features** soft key. Select the day for which you want to set a programme or select **All Week** to select the same start time for every day.
3. Touch the Timer 1 or Timer 2 icon. The timers can be toggled between on and off using the power soft key.
4. Touch the up or down arrows to set the start time. Hours and minutes are adjusted separately.
5. Touch **OK**.

The screen will display the activation time. If required, set the time for the other timer using the same process.

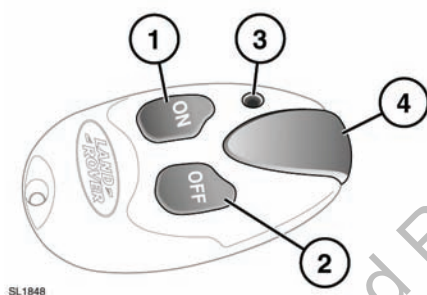
Note: The time format, 12/24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the **System settings** menu. **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**

A current heating cycle will be cancelled if the engine is started. Any programmed heating cycle may be cancelled by touching the relevant power soft key on the timer set up menu or the **Power** soft key on the **Timed Climate** information home menu.

Via the remote control;

The dedicated remote control has a range of approximately 100m (328ft). Press and hold the **ON** button for two seconds.

Note: Avoid touching the antenna when operating the **ON** or **OFF** button.



1. On button.
2. Off button.
3. LED (operation indicator).
4. Antenna.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately two seconds. The green LED will illuminate for two seconds to confirm that a program has been initiated. The LED flashes once every two seconds to indicate that the program is active.

The timed climate program will continue for 20 minutes and then switch off automatically to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. It also turns off automatically if the engine is started.

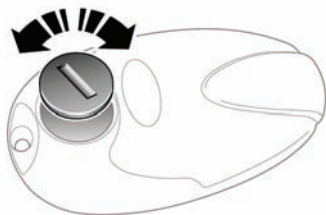
The system may not operate, or will switch off automatically, if:

- Fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- Engine coolant temperature is at or above its required temperature.
- The engine has not been started since the last programme cycle.

The remote control LED indicator signals other states and conditions for the timed climate as follows:

- Illuminates red for two seconds when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the program has stopped.
- Flashes green or red for two seconds then stops when the **ON** or **OFF** buttons are pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Illuminates orange for two seconds before showing green or red, to indicate that the remote battery is low.
- Flashes orange for five seconds to indicate that no action has been taken and the remote battery should be replaced.

REPLACING THE BATTERIES



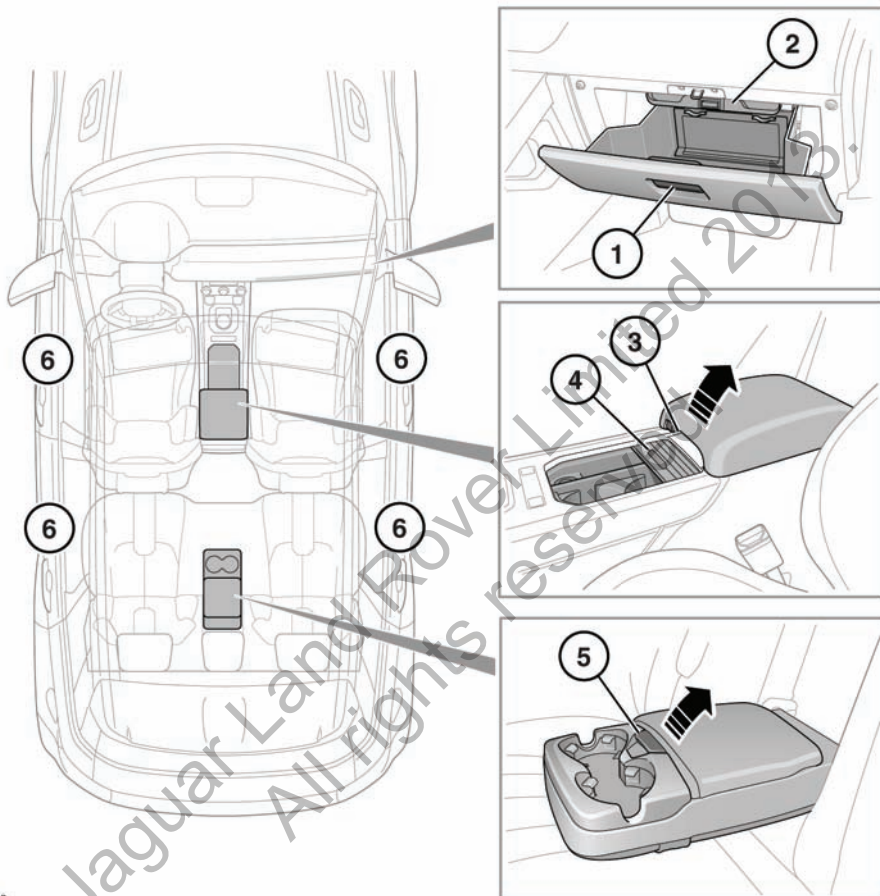
SL1849

With the back of the remote control facing upwards, use a coin or similar implement to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, ensuring that the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement 3.3 volt, CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock.

ADDITIONAL REMOTE CONTROLS

A maximum of three controls can be programmed to each vehicle. Contact your Land Rover dealer to purchase additional units and have them programmed to your vehicle.

STORAGE AND CUP HOLDERS



- SL1889
1. Glovebox.
 2. Inside the glovebox is a drop down storage area for the Owner's Handbook pack.
 3. Cubby box.
 4. Sliding top to reveal cup holders.



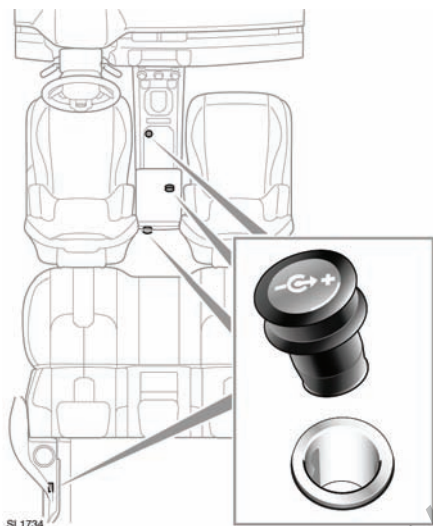
Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.

5. Rear armrest storage and cup holders.
6. Storage areas.



Ensure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to a sudden braking or direction change, loose items can cause serious injury.

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



- ❗ Only use Land Rover approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause battery discharge. If you are in any doubt contact a Land Rover Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.
- ❗ The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

Note: Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.

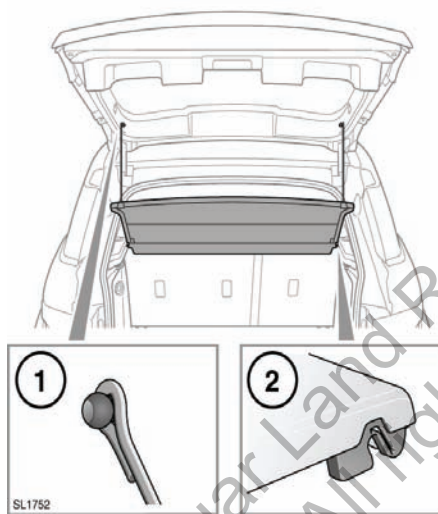
LOAD CARRYING



Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.



Always ensure that objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.



To remove the loadspace cover:

1. Release the two straps from the pins on the tailgate.
2. Pull the cover rearwards to release the retaining brackets on the edges of the cover from the pins on the loadspace side trim.



Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

Installation of the cover is the reverse of removal.

Storing the cover:



Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle.

1. Remove the loadspace cover.
2. Fold the rear seats forward.
3. Position the cover vertically in the vehicle approximately where the upright rear seat backrests are normally. The top surface of the cover must be facing forwards with the retaining brackets at the top.
4. Locate the retaining brackets onto the side trim pins.
5. Return the rear seats to the upright locked position.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS



A loaded roof rack can reduce the stability of the vehicle, particularly when cornering and during cross winds.



Driving off road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended.

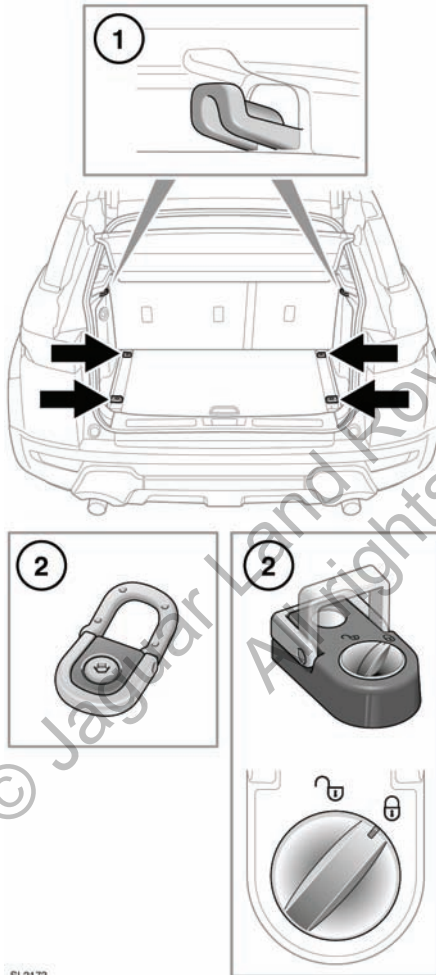
Fit only a roof rack system that is designed for use with your vehicle. For further information, consult your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

The maximum load for a Land Rover approved roof rack system is 75kg (165lb) while driving on road. Off road driving reduces the limit to 50kg (110lb). The weight of the approved roof rack system is not calculated as part of the load.

If an alternative roof rack system is used, the weight of that system must be included as part of the load weight.

Loads must be evenly distributed within the periphery of the rack. After travelling 50km (30 miles) check the security of the roof rack and any load.

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



SL2173



All items carried in the luggage area should be properly secured.

1. Bag hooks.
 - The bag hooks should only be used to secure light items such as shopping bags.
2. Load securing lashing eyes.
 - To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four lashing eyes are located in the rear loadspace floor. If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, first turn the locking button counter clockwise to unlock. Press the button and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the button to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly until you hear a click. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the button clockwise to lock.

Note: A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

TOWING WEIGHTS

Maximum permissible towing weights	On-road	Off-road
Unbraked trailers	750kg (1650lb)	750kg (1650lb)
Trailers with overrun/electric brakes (4WD)	1800kg (3968lb)	750kg (1650lb)
Trailers with overrun/electric brakes (2WD)	1500kg (3330lb)	750kg (1650lb)
Nose weight	150kg (330lb)	150kg (330lb)

See **219, WEIGHTS**, for details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross train weight (GTW), axle weights and maximum payload.

Europe only:

When towing, the maximum permissible Gross Vehicle Weight can be increased by a maximum of 100kg (220lb) provided that the road speed is limited to 97km/h (60mph).

Note: When calculating rear axle loading, remember that the trailer nose weight, the load in the vehicle's luggage area, weight on the roof rack, and the weight of rear seat passengers must all be added together.

TOWING A TRAILER



Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle, or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle. It can also adversely affect vehicle stability and braking which in turn can lead to loss of control and increased braking distance, resulting in a rollover or crash.



To preserve handling and stability, only fit Land Rover approved towing accessories.



Never use towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer. They have not been designed for this purpose and doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in injury or death.

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS



Do not loop the breakaway cable over the tow ball as it may slide off.



Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and loss of control.

- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Ensure trailer tyre pressures are set to trailer manufacturer's recommendations.
- To maintain vehicle stability, it is essential that the trailer is loaded so that it remains parallel to the ground. This is particularly important when towing twin axled trailers.

- If the vehicle is loaded to maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) the nose weight is limited to 150kg (330lbs). See **219, WEIGHTS**.
- Ensure that a suitable breakaway cable or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Ensure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all trailer lights.

Australia only:

- **Nose weight** - Must be a minimum of 7% of gross caravan/trailer weight, up to a maximum of 150kg (330lb).

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION



Connect only approved electrical circuits, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket.

The vehicle connector provides a 5 amp output which must not be exceeded. An accessory harness kit increasing output to 15 amp is available from your Land Rover Dealer.



When a trailer electrical connection is made and the vehicle's direction indicators are used, the trailer warning indicator will flash in time with the direction indicators.

TAILGATE CLEARANCE



When towing, ensure there is sufficient clearance before opening or closing the tailgate.

REAR PARKING AIDS

The rear parking aids sensors are automatically disabled when a trailer with an approved electrical connector is connected.

Note: Trailers fitted with LED lights will not disable the rear parking aids sensors. When reverse gear is selected, the attached trailer will be detected as an obstacle.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

When a trailer is attached, TSA will automatically detect when a trailer sway is developing. It will then gradually reduce vehicle speed by cutting engine power and applying the brakes to help regain control.

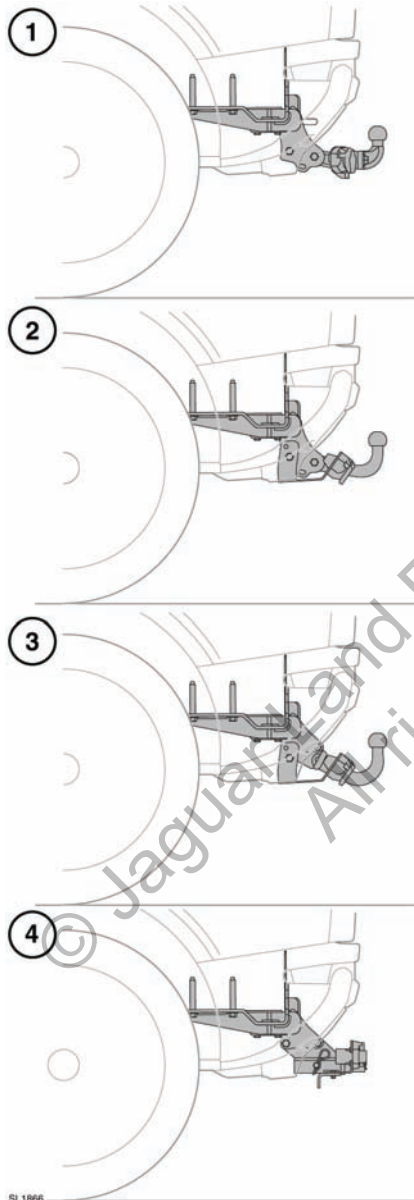
HITCH ASSIST

Hitch assist is a user selectable touch screen feature that can aid the process of guiding the vehicle to the trailer tow hitch. See **106, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Fit and remove instructions are supplied with this accessory fit item. Ensure that they are kept in a safe place.

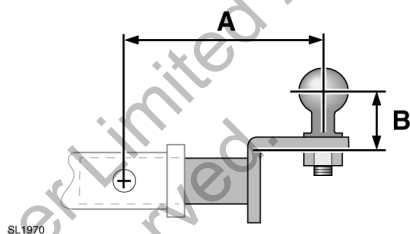
TOW BALL OPTIONS



1. Bolt on tow ball onto flange.
2. Fixed swan neck tow ball.
3. Detachable tow ball.
4. Receiver for hitch (drawbar). Australia only.

TRAILER HITCH - Australia only

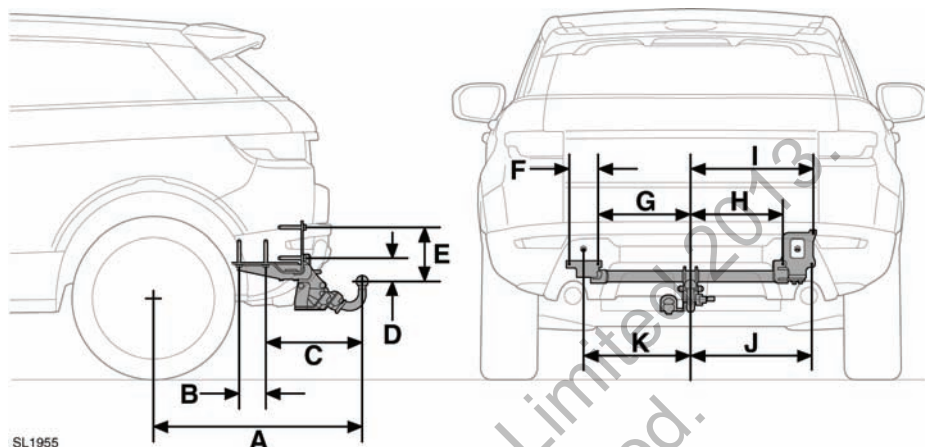
When selecting a drawbar for the receiver, the following dimensions must be adhered to:



- A. The maximum recommended drawbar length is 178mm (7 in).
- B. To achieve the maximum ball height, a drawbar with a rise of 68mm (2.7 in) is recommended.

Consult your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest information.

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS



Ref.	Dimension	MM	Inches
A	Wheel centre to centre of tow ball	871 mm	34.3 in.
B	Fixing points	110 mm	4.3 in.
C	Fixing point to centre of tow ball	405.5 mm	16.0 in.
D	Centre of tow ball to tow bar attachment	83 mm	3.3 in.
E	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	220 mm	8.7 in.
F	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	130 mm	5.1 in.
G	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	415 mm	16.3 in.
H	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	415 mm	16.3 in.
I	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	550 mm	21.7 in.
J	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	544 mm	21.4 in.
K	Centre of tow ball to fixing point	480 mm	18.9 in.

Note: Dimensions refer to towing equipment officially released by Land Rover.

Starting the engine

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To turn on the ignition without starting the engine:-

- Do not depress the brake/clutch pedal,
- Press the START/STOP button and hold until the warning lamps illuminate, then release the button.



If the brake/clutch pedal is applied when the start/stop button is pressed, the engine will start.

ENGINE STARTING



Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gasses are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.



If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic convertor due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: For diesel engined vehicles the delay period before cranking begins will be longer in low ambient temperatures due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay the clutch pedal (manual transmissions) or brake pedal (automatic transmissions) must remain depressed.



The diesel engine glow plug warning lamp will remain illuminated while the glow plugs are operating.

ENGINE STARTING: AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. A valid Smart Key must be inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the gear selector is in **P** or **N**.

3. Firmly depress the brake pedal.
4. Press and release the start button. The engine will crank automatically until it starts. For diesel engined vehicles there may be a delay while the glow plugs warm up, then the engine will crank automatically until it starts.

ENGINE STARTING: MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Note: Do not press the accelerator pedal when starting the engine.

1. A valid Smart Key must be inside the vehicle.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
3. Press and release the start button. For diesel engined vehicles there may be a delay while the glow plugs warm up, then the engine will crank automatically until it starts.

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

Note: If the engine fails to crank when the START/STOP button is pressed and there has been a recent collision, seek qualified assistance.

If the engine fails to crank, or fails to start, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Diesel engines:

If the engine persistently fails to start, make sure the transmission is in **P** or **N** (neutral for manual transmission vehicles) then press the START/STOP button (with the brake pedal applied). Keep the START/STOP button and the brake pedal pressed until the engine starts, then release.

If the engine still fails to crank, or fails to start consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely with the parking brake applied.

1. Select **P** for automatic transmission, or neutral for manual transmissions.

Note: If any other gear is selected at switch off, the rotary selector will automatically move to **P** before retracting into the centre console.

2. Press the START/STOP button.

Note: The parking brake will apply automatically if it has not already been applied.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE WHILE MOVING



It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, should such a situation arise, then the following procedure applies.

- Press and hold the engine START/STOP button for 2 seconds, or;
- Press the engine START/STOP button twice within 2 seconds.

In either case, the warning **Engine Stop Button Pressed** will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

ROLLING RE-START

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling re-start can be initiated.

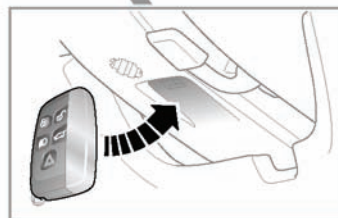
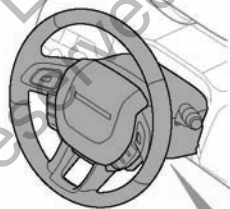
Automatic transmission - select neutral (**N**) and then press the engine START/STOP button. When the engine re-starts, select transmission position **D**.

Manual transmission - depress the clutch and then press the engine START/STOP button. When the engine re-starts, select an appropriate forward gear.

KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade or the Smart Key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the keyless start backup to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The keyless start backup can only be used when the message **Smart Key Not Found Refer to Handbook** is displayed in the Driver information centre.



SL1890

Position the Smart Key against the underside of the steering column cover with the buttons facing downwards.

With the brake (Auto) or clutch (Man) pedal depressed, press and release the START/STOP button to start the engine.

When the engine starts, you no longer need to hold the Smart Key beneath the steering column.

Starting the engine

Note: If the Smart Key is not recognised or the engine still fails to start, consult your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

Note: If the message **Smart Key Not Detected** is displayed, ensure that the key is being held in the correct position and try again.

ECO STOP/START

The Stop/Start system with manual transmission has been designed to improve fuel efficiency. The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is stopped by the stop/start system, the ECO icon will illuminate.



When the vehicle comes to a stop, neutral is selected and the clutch is fully released, the engine automatically switches off.

When the clutch is depressed prior to selecting a gear, the engine automatically restarts.

CONDITIONS PREVENTING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

The engine will not automatically stop if:-

- the external temperature is below approximately 0°C (32°F)
- the external temperature is above approximately 40°C (104°F)
- engine has not reached operating temperature
- driver's seat belt is not fastened
- driver's door is not fully closed
- the driver's foot is on either the clutch or accelerator pedals
- climate control system demand is high
- battery charge is low
- the DPF is regenerating
- HDC or a Terrain Response special program are selected

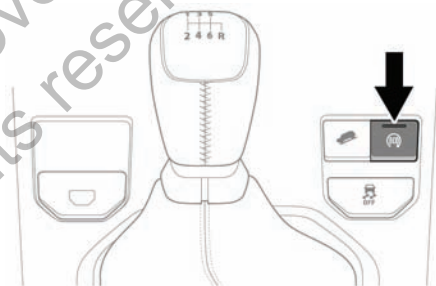
Note: The stop/start system is disabled when a trailer electrical connection is made.

CONDITIONS CAUSING AUTOMATIC ENGINE RESTART

The engine will automatically start if:-

- climate control system demand increases
- the vehicle's speed reaches approximately 4km/h (2.5mph)
- HDC or a Terrain Response special program are selected
- battery charge becomes low
- brake vacuum has been reduced (eg using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off)

DEACTIVATING ECO STOP/START



To switch the system off (preventing automatic stop/start) press the **ECO** switch. The amber LED indicator will extinguish to confirm that the system is off.

Note: The engine will restart automatically if the switch is pressed to disable the system, while an automatic engine stop is in progress.

If the LED indicator fails to illuminate at start up, a system fault may be present. Contact your Land Rover Dealer for assistance.

ECO STALL RECOVERY

In the event that the engine stalls, it can be restarted by fully depressing the clutch pedal.

Note: *Automatic stall restart will only operate once. If the engine is stalled a second time the engine must be restarted normally.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

Diesel vehicles equipped with a particulate filter have more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving.

When a DPF message is displayed, the filter requires a regeneration cycle to clean itself. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration takes place automatically at an interval of approximately 300-900 km (190-560 miles) depending on driving conditions.

Regeneration procedure



The regeneration procedure produces high temperatures in the DPF. Heat can be felt radiating from beneath the vehicle, which is normal. The heat generated could be sufficient to start a fire when in close proximity to combustible material such as long dry grass, paper etc.

Regeneration normally takes 10-20 minutes and is best achieved if the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 60km/h (40mph) and 112km/h (70mph).

Regeneration may take longer if the average speed is reduced to 50km/h (30mph).

Driving short distances or in cold weather

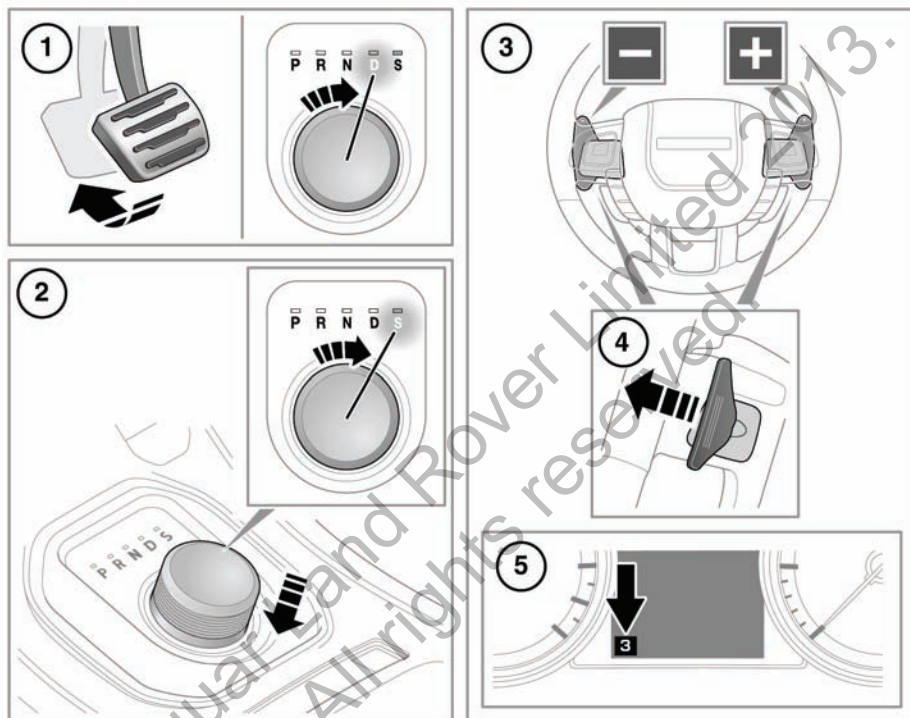
In these conditions the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. Regeneration of the diesel particulate filter will not take place and the filter will not be cleaned. If the filter requires regeneration but current driving style

is not appropriate to perform it, a warning triangle will illuminate on the instrument panel and the message **DPF Full. See manual**, will be displayed. This does not indicate a fault condition. Start regeneration by driving the vehicle, preferably on a main road or motorway. The vehicle should be driven for approximately 20 minutes more.

When regeneration is complete, the warnings will clear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The rotary drive selector rotates in either direction. At engine start up, the selector elevates out of its parked position.



1. To select **D** (Drive) or **R** (Reverse) gear, apply the foot brake then rotate the drive selector. The related LED by the selector will illuminate.

Note: If pressure is applied to the selector before the foot brake is applied, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove pressure from the selector, ensure that the foot brake is

applied and select the required gear as described.

2. To select **S** (Sport) mode from **D**, press the drive selector down and rotate to **S**. The related LED by the selector will illuminate.
3. CommandShift™ gear selector paddles (left paddle for downshifts, right paddle for upshifts).
4. Pull a paddle briefly to change gear. To exit CommandShift™ mode and return to

Sport mode, pull and hold the upshift (+) paddle for approximately one second. To return to Drive mode, move the selector back to the **D** position.

- The selected gear will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

 Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a sustained period, with a gear selected and the engine running.

 This vehicle must not be push or tow started.

PARK

Use when the vehicle is parked. The transmission will be locked.

 **Park (P) or Neutral (N) should be engaged and the parking brake applied when the vehicle is stationary.**

 **Always select P and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.**

 Never select Park (**P**) when the vehicle is in motion.

REVERSE

 Never select Reverse (**R**) when the vehicle is in forward motion.

Before selecting reverse gear, ensure the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.

Rotate to **R**.

NEUTRAL

Disconnects drive to the wheels. Use the parking brake while **N** is selected.

Do not use for vehicle recovery purposes.

DRIVE

 Never select a forward gear when the vehicle is in rearward motion.

Gear changing is fully automatic. Shift points are determined by accelerator pedal position and current road speed.

SPORT

The transmission will stay in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance. To deselect Sport mode, move the selector back to **D**.

COMMANDSHIFT™

With Sport mode selected, use the gearshift paddles to change gear. CommandShift can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.

Transmission Commandshift Selected will appear in the Driver information centre when the transmission is in CommandShift mode.

To return to Sport mode after CommandShift has been selected, move the selector back to **D** then back to Sport mode.

Note: *In order to protect the engine, the transmission will automatically change up to prevent over-revving, or down if the engine is labouring.*

KICK-DOWN

Push the accelerator pedal fully down to achieve rapid acceleration in automatic mode. When the pedal is relaxed, normal gear changing will resume.

ROTARY DRIVE SELECTOR

P should normally be selected before switching off the engine. If any other gear is selected at turn off, the selector will move to **P** before retracting into the centre console.

If the engine is switched off with **N** selected, the system will wait for ten minutes before selecting **P**. This time delay allows the vehicle enough time to be conveyed through a car wash. Do not use for vehicle recovery purposes.

If your vehicle requires recovery by towing, the recovery must be undertaken by qualified personnel. See **239, RECOVERY METHOD**.

IF THE DRIVE SELECTOR FAILS TO ELEVATE

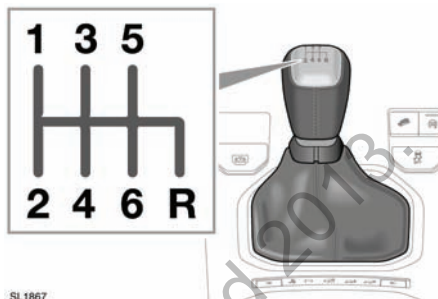
If the drive selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The selector should elevate as normal.

If the selector still fails to elevate, even if there is no obstruction, a fault in the system is indicated. The selector can still be used in the lowered position. Ensure that **P** is selected before engine switch off. Have the fault rectified at the earliest opportunity.

TRANSMISSION FAULT

In the event that the transmission develops a fault, a warning message may be displayed in the Driver information centre and only limited gears may become available. You should seek qualified assistance immediately.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION



Selection of reverse gear is prevented when the vehicle is travelling in excess of 24km/h (15mph). Never attempt to engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in forward motion. This may result in serious transmission damage and costly repairs.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR



The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (upshift).

The shift indicator will not illuminate while Cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the throttle pedal.

Note: This indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.

BRAKES-IMPORTANT INFORMATION



Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion.



Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine turned off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.



If the red brake warning indicator illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.



Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

BRAKE WARNING LAMP



The ABS warning lamp illuminates briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If this amber warning lamp illuminates when driving (accompanied by an associated warning message), drive with extra caution, avoid heavy braking where possible, and seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.



ABS cannot overcome the physical limitations of stopping the vehicle in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed or the danger of aquaplaning.

Do not take risks that could affect the safety of yourself, your passengers and any other road users. It is the driver's responsibility to drive within normal safety margins, giving due consideration to prevailing weather and traffic conditions.

BRAKING ON STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide even with the brakes applied. This is because without wheel rotation, the ABS cannot determine vehicle movement.

To counteract this, briefly release the brakes to allow some wheel rotation. Then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, EBA automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly, but conditions mean that ABS operates on the front wheels, EBA will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.



The amber brake warning lamp illuminates briefly when the ignition is turned on.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

EBD controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle for example), EBD will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, EBD will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.



The red brake warning lamp illuminates briefly when the ignition is turned on.

A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the red brake warning indicator illuminating and an associated warning message. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)



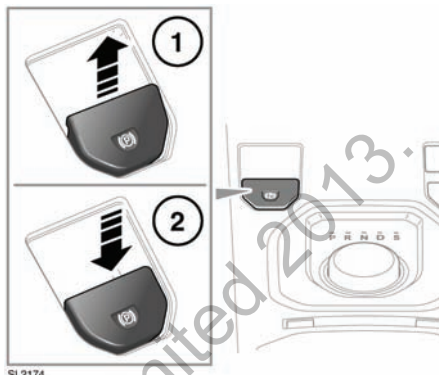
The parking brake operates on the rear wheels. Therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.



Do not rely on the parking brake to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.

Note: If the vehicle is used in severe off-road conditions (e.g. wading, deep mud, etc.), additional maintenance and adjustment of the parking brake will be required. Consult your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

EPB MANUAL USE



1. To apply the parking brake while the ignition is on or off, with the vehicle stationary pull up the lever and release it.



The parking brake warning lamp will illuminate continuously while the ignition remains on and for ten seconds after the ignition is turned off. It is important to confirm that the lamp is continuously illuminated (not flashing), as this indicates the brake has been correctly applied.

If the lever is operated while the vehicle is still moving and speed is less than 3km/h (2mph) the vehicle will be brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps will not be illuminated.

If a fault is detected the warning lamp will flash and a **PARKBRAKE** message will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

2. To release the parking brake, with the ignition on, press the brake pedal then press down on the EPB lever. The parking brake warning lamp will extinguish.



Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied, or repeated use of the parking brake to slow the vehicle, may cause serious damage to the brake system.

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling at more than 3km/h (2mph), pulling up the EPB lever and holding gives a gradual reduction in speed. The brake warning indicator will illuminate accompanied by a warning tone and a **PARKBRAKE** message appearing in the Driver information centre. The stop lamps will illuminate. Emergency operation will cease if the EPB lever is released or pressed down.

EPB AUTOMATIC USE

With manual transmission EPB will be applied automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle speed is below 3km/h (2mph).

To prevent this automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

With automatic transmission EPB is applied automatically when **P** is selected.

In the event of a failure, a **PARKBRAKE** message will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

EPB release - manual transmission:

If the vehicle is stationary with the engine running and the EPB applied, pressing the accelerator and releasing the clutch while in gear will release the EPB automatically and allow the vehicle to move off.

Automatic release will operate in first, second and reverse gears.

To affect this automatic release, the driver's door must be closed or the driver's safety belt must be buckled.

To delay automatic release, hold the EPB lever in the applied position and release at the desired point. The parking brake system gradually reduces the system load to assist a smooth drive away.

EPB release - automatic transmission:

If the vehicle is stationary with the engine running while the transmission is in **D** or **R** and the EPB is then applied, pressing the accelerator will release the EPB automatically and allow the vehicle to move off.

The parking brake is also automatically released when the rotary selector is moved from the **P** position.

To affect an automatic release, the foot brake must be applied and also the driver's door must be closed or the driver's safety belt must be buckled.

To delay automatic release, hold the EPB lever in the applied position and release at the desired point. The parking brake system gradually reduces the system load to assist a smooth drive away.

At the start of a journey, EPB release times may be extended when changing from **P** or **N**. This is to allow for increased gear engagement times.

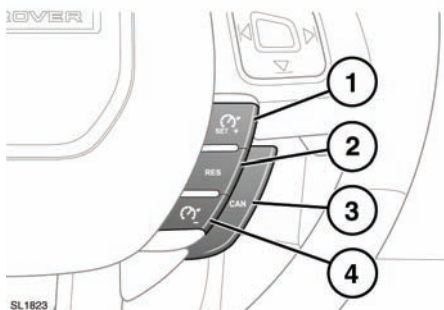
EPB WARNING INDICATORS

If the system detects a fault with the EPB, the amber brake warning indicator will illuminate accompanied by a message in the Driver information centre.

If the system detects a fault while EPB is operating, the red brake warning indicator will flash and a **PARKBRAKE FAULT** message will display in the Driver information centre.

Note: The red brake warning indicator will continue to be illuminated for at least ten seconds after the ignition has been turned off.

USING CRUISE CONTROL



1. Set target speed, or increase speed.
2. **RES.** Resume set speed.
3. **CAN.** Suspends cruise control operation without erasing memorised speed.
4. Decrease set speed.

Note: Cruise control is not available when using Hill Descent Control or when a Terrain Response Mud-Ruts or Sand programs are selected.

Note: Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.

SETTING THE CRUISE SPEED



When setting the cruise control to the speed limit, it is important to remember that it is possible for the vehicle speed to increase when travelling downhill.

This may result in the vehicle speed exceeding the speed limit.

Note: Cruise control can be engaged only at speeds in excess of 30km/h (18mph).

Accelerate until the desired speed is reached, then press control (1). This sets the vehicle speed into the system's memory. Cruise control will now maintain that speed.



The cruise control warning lamp will illuminate to confirm cruise control is operational.

Speed can still be increased using the accelerator pedal. As soon as the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle speed will return to the set cruising speed.

Note: If the accelerator pedal is pressed for more than 60 seconds, cruise control will be cancelled.

To increase the set cruise speed, press and hold control (1). Release the switch when the desired speed is reached, the new speed will be set and maintained.

The speed can be increased in steps of 2km/h (1mph), by briefly pressing control (1).

Speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached press control (1) to set and maintain the new speed.

Note: The set speed can be erased only by switching off the ignition.

CHANGING THE CRUISE SPEED

To reduce cruising speed, press and hold control (4). Release the switch when the desired speed is reached, the new speed will be set and maintained.

The set speed can be decreased in steps of 2km/h (1mph), by briefly pressing control (4).

SUSPENDING AND RESUMING THE CRUISE SPEED

Suspend cruise control with a single press of control (3).

To resume cruise control at the previous set speed, press control (2).

❗ **RES (2)** should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

❗ It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.

AUTOMATIC SWITCH OFF

Cruise control will switch off but the set speed will remain in the memory when:

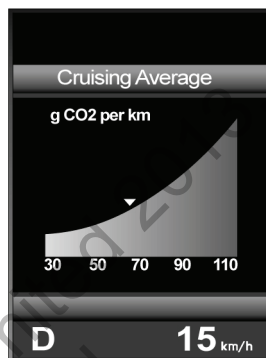
- The **CAN** button **(3)** is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Speed falls below 30km/h (18mph).
- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear is selected on vehicles with automatic transmission.
- Dynamic Stability Control is operating.
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great.
- The vehicle reaches a speed of 170km/h (105.6mph).
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period.

Cruise control will switch off and clear the memory when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared.

CRUISE ECO DATA

Diesel only



SL2123

When enabled, a CO² emission indicator is displayed in the Driver information centre. The higher the numeric reading, the more CO² is being emitted and the more fuel is being used. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU**.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

DSC is automatically enabled each time the engine is started, and is automatically enabled by some of the Terrain Response special programs.



The vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low-slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

DSC WARNING LAMP



The amber DSC warning lamp in the Driver information centre illuminates briefly when the

ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp flashes while driving, the DSC system is active. If the lamp illuminates continuously while driving, there is a fault with the DSC system. The vehicle can still be driven, but the DSC system will not activate under wheel spin or slide conditions.

Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

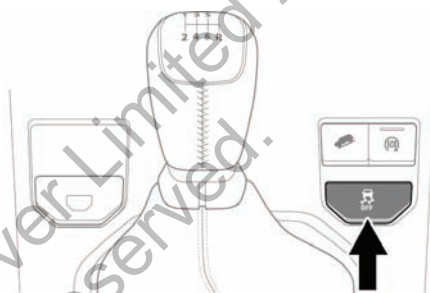
SWITCHING DSC OFF



Safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling DSC. In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that you do not disable DSC.

In some driving conditions it may be appropriate to disable DSC to improve traction. These conditions include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow, or a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.
- Driving along tracks with deep longitudinal ruts.



To disable DSC, press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch. The DSC OFF warning lamp will illuminate continuously. The amber DSC OFF warning lamp in the instrument panel will also illuminate. Deactivating DSC also reduces the level of electronic traction control intervention and may lead to an increase in wheel spin.

SWITCHING DSC ON

DSC is re-enabled by one of the following:

- Press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch.
- Stop and restart the engine.
- Select a new Terrain Response special program.

ELECTRONIC TRACTION CONTROL (ETC)

ETC operates in conjunction with Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and is designed to assist when one or more wheels have lost traction.

If a wheel loses traction, ETC will operate the brake on that wheel until it regains traction. The amber DSC warning lamp in the instrument panel will flash to inform the driver that ETC is operating.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

The adaptive dynamics continuously monitor road and driver inputs. It detects rough road and off road conditions, optimises the vehicle suspension settings to suit each surface type and adjusts control for greater ride comfort.

Adaptive dynamics is also linked to the Terrain Response Dynamic program, modifying the suspension settings for a more sporting character.

If **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** is displayed in the Driver information centre, the vehicle can still be driven. The fault may be temporary. If the fault persists, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

BEFORE DRIVING OFF-ROAD

Before venturing off-road, it is absolutely essential that inexperienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the Terrain Response system.

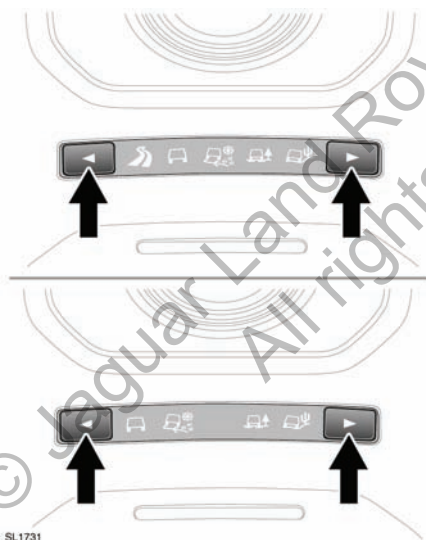
Basic guidance for Off-Road driving can be found in the Land Rover Off-Road Driving handbook. This is a free download at:

www.ownerinfo.landrover.com.

Also, Off-Road training is available at Land Rover Experience centres. Further information is available at:

www.landroverexperience.com.

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION



Terrain Response selection is via one of two centre console switches. Depending on vehicle specification, the control switches may include a Dynamic program setting. Use the switches to move through up to five program selections. The currently selected program icon will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

Note: *Changing between special programs will alter various vehicle settings, e.g., engine revs while at the current accelerator pedal position may alter, or the steering feel might change. These changes are not dramatic but will be noticeable.*

It is advisable to experiment with the available settings in an environment that will not affect other road users.

DYNAMIC



This special program is associated with a driving style rather than a type of terrain. Choose this program for exploiting the vehicle's full on-road potential, providing a more focussed and involved driving experience.

When selected, this program optimises handling and driveability characteristics for maximum feedback and responsiveness.

GENERAL PROGRAM (SPECIAL PROGRAMS OFF)



This program is compatible with all on and off-road conditions. If not already active, it should be selected before driving on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. Dry cobbles, tarmac, dry wooden planks, etc., all fall into this category.

This program should be selected once the need for a special program has passed. Once the special program has been deselected, all of the vehicle systems will return to their normal settings except HDC. HDC will remain active if it was selected manually.

GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW



This program should be used where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material.

Note: For deep snow it is recommended that the Sand program is selected.

Note: If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in deep snow, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again, as soon as the difficulty is overcome.

MUD-RUTS



This program should be used for crossing terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft or uneven. HDC is automatically selected with this program.

SAND



This program should be used for terrain which is predominantly soft dry sand or deep gravel.

Note: If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in extremely soft, dry sand, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome.

If the sand to be crossed is damp/wet, and sufficiently deep to cause the wheels to sink into the surface, the Mud-Ruts program should be used.

WADING

The maximum advisable wading depth is 500mm (19.7in). If the vehicle remains stationary in water above the door sill level, severe electrical damage may occur.



Do not switch off the engine when wading and avoid stopping. If the engine stalls, restart immediately.

If water has entered the engine air intake, switch off immediately. The vehicle **must** be recovered from the water and be transported to a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

Although Dynamic Stability Control is automatically engaged when a special program is selected, it can be turned off if required. See **92, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) will be automatically engaged for some terrain response programs. If required it can be deselected or engaged independently of Terrain response. See **98, HDC CONTROLS**.

The HDC status will be displayed in the Driver informationcentre whether it is engaged, or disengaged, by the system or by the driver.

SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES



Use of an incorrect program will impair the vehicle's response to the terrain and can reduce the life of the suspension and drive systems.

If the system becomes partially inoperable for any reason, it may not be possible to select special programs. A warning will be given when selection of a special program is attempted.

If a participating vehicle system becomes temporarily inoperable, the general program will be automatically selected. Once the system returns to normal operation, the previously active program will be re-activated unless the ignition has been turned off in the mean time.

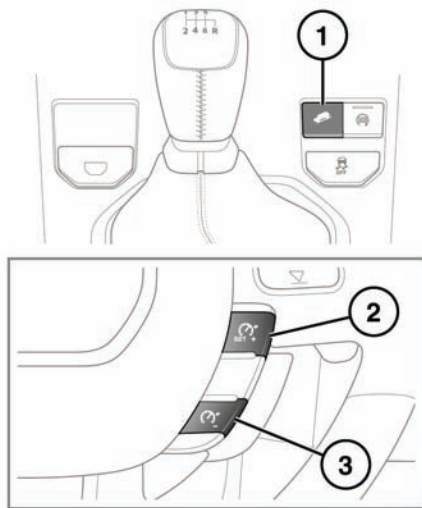
If the system becomes completely inoperable, all of the special program indicators will be switched off and a relevant message will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

TERRAIN RESPONSE MESSAGES

Messages relating to the Terrain Response system are displayed in the Driver information centre. See **59, INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

Most of the messages that appear will be for information only and require no driver intervention.

HDC CONTROLS



1. Press to switch HDC on and off.
2. Press to increase the set speed.
3. Press to decrease the set speed.

Manual transmission: HDC can be used in 1st, 2nd or reverse gears.

Automatic transmission: HDC can be used in **D**, **R** and CommandShift **1**, **2** or **3**.

Note: HDC is automatically selected by some of the Terrain Response special programs.

HDC can be selected at speeds above 80km/h (50mph) but will not engage until vehicle speed drops below 50km/h (30mph). The HDC warning lamp will flash while vehicle speed is above 50km/h (30mph).

The green warning lamp in the Driver information centre will illuminate while HDC is active.

A green graphic will also be displayed in the Driver information centre showing the HDC target speed. When HDC is unable to operate, the display will be grey. The graphic indicates the range of target speeds available in the currently selected gear. Target speed is adjusted via the cruise control switches.

If HDC is deselected while operating, the green warning lamp will flash and the system will fade out, allowing vehicle speed to gradually increase.

Note: HDC is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than six hours.

HDC OPERATION

With HDC engaged, standard descent speed will not exceed 20km/h (12.4mph).

While the green warning lamp is continuously illuminated, HDC target speed can be modified using the cruise control steering wheel switches, as follows:

- To increase speed, press and hold switch (2) until the green pointer in the target speed display is at the desired speed.
- To decrease speed, press and hold switch (3) until the green pointer in the target speed display is at the desired speed.

Release the switch to set the target speed.

Note: The white needle indicates the current vehicle speed.

To increase or decrease speed gradually, tap switches (2) and (3) as required. Each tap of the switch will increase/decrease the speed in increments/decrements of 1km/h (0.6mph).

Note: If a new target speed is set and then reverse gear is selected, the target speed will change to the default reverse speed. When a forward gear is next selected, the new target speed is reinstated.

Note: Each gear has a pre-determined minimum speed.

Descent speed will increase only when a slope is steep enough to provide additional momentum. Therefore, use of switch (2) on a gentle slope may not increase the speed.

If the brake pedal is depressed, HDC will be overridden and the brakes will operate as normal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC will resume control of the descent.

If HDC is switched off during a descent, HDC will fade out gradually. This is to prevent loss of control if HDC is switched off in error.

HDC will resume control when switched back on, at the standard default speed.



Do not attempt a steep descent if HDC is inoperative or warning messages are displayed.

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

With HDC activated, if the vehicle is stopped on a slope using the foot brake, GRC will become active (except in Terrain Response Sand program). It operates in all gears and in neutral position.

During a steep hill descent, when the foot brake is released GRC will automatically hold brake force for a short period before gradually releasing it, allowing for maximum control to be retained.

During an uphill start, a similar brake hold and gradual release is employed. This allows time for the driver to apply speed and allow the vehicle to move away smoothly.

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, the HDC system may cause brake temperatures to exceed their pre-set limits. An **HDC** warning will be displayed in the Driver information centre. HDC will then fade out and become temporarily inactive.

Once the brakes have reached an acceptable temperature, the message will disappear (or the warning indicator will extinguish) and HDC will, if required, resume operation.

HDC SYSTEM FAULT

If a fault is detected in the HDC system, an **HDC** warning will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

If the fault is detected while the system is operating, HDC will then fade out.

If a fault is detected, contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

AUTOMATIC SYSTEMS

Gradient Acceleration Control (GAC) and **Hill Start Assist** are not active while HDC is operating.

GAC will limit vehicle acceleration on steep descents, allowing the driver to feel more in control of the vehicle.

Hill Start Assist activates when starting a hill ascent from a stationary position. When the foot brake is released Hill Start Assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to move away without rolling backwards.

Any fault with GAC or Hill Start Assist will be indicated by the DSC warning lamp being illuminated and a message in the Driver information centre.

PARK ASSIST

Park assist is an aid to parallel parking in tight parking slots. The space required is only 1.2 times the length of your vehicle. For the system to operate correctly, your vehicle must be parallel to a line of parked vehicles along which you intend to search for a parking space. Your front wheels must be in the straight ahead position. Parking on a bend may cause the system to miscalculate distances.

When the sensors detect a space sufficient to park in you will be instructed via the Driver information centre of the next move.

The actual parking manoeuvre is controlled by the vehicle, without your hands on the steering wheel. The Driver information centre will advise when the steering wheel must be released.



Park assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.



Park assist may not detect moving objects such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring.



Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g. narrow posts, small objects close to the ground and some objects with dark non-reflective surfaces, and in some circumstances bicycles/motor cycles parked alongside the kerb.



All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud or snow. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation.



Park assist must not be used if any of the following are apparent;

A temporary spare wheel is in use.

A sensor is damaged or the bumper is damaged sufficiently to affect a sensor mounting point.

A sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, a trailer, stickers, etc.

The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle perimeter.



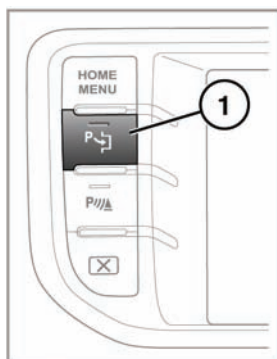
When Park assist searches for a appropriate parking space, there must be an acceptable distinction between the road surface and the kerb height. Damaged or very low kerbs or kerbs covered with debris or snow may cause a sensor miscalculation.

Note: All doors, except the driver's door, must be securely closed.

Note: During any Park assist manoeuvre, the parking aids remain active and will sound when objects are detected near the vehicle.

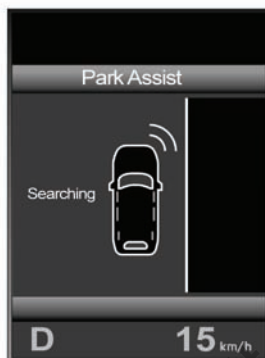
Note: A parking manoeuvre can be cancelled at any point by holding / turning the steering wheel or by pressing the Park assist button.

Note: In a situation where the rows of parked vehicles on either side of the road are close enough for Park assist to sense them and Park assist determines that there is not enough manoeuvring space for reverse parking, the space will be rejected, even if the driver believes the space is large enough to park the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch off Park assist and to attempt the parking manoeuvre manually.



SL1692

2



1. To activate, press the Park assist button while driving forwards at less than 30km/h (19mph). The indicator lamp in the button illuminates.

Note: If vehicle speed exceeds 30km/h (19mph), **SLOW DOWN!** is displayed until speed decreases to less than 30km/h (19mph) again. If vehicle speed is not reduced, Park assist is de-activated and the indicator light in the button is extinguished.

Note: Park assist sensors can be affected by sudden temperature differentials. For example, if the vehicle is moved from a warm interior into a cold exterior temperature, the sensors will require time to adjust. The same applies if the move is from a cold situation into a significantly warmer ambient temperature.

2. The **Park Assist** display appears in the Driver information centre and shows the **Searching** message and graphic. All messages and instructions are displayed here. Take action when the text is an instruction.

Note: For Park assist to operate effectively, maintain a distance of 0.5 to 1.5 metres (1.6 to 4.9 ft) between your vehicle and the line of parked vehicles / obstacles in which you want to park.

3. When first activated Park assist searches for a space on the front passenger side of the vehicle. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction.

Note: If vehicle speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph) during the parking manoeuvre, Park assist will display a **SLOW DOWN!** message until speed decreases to less than 10km/h (6mph). If vehicle speed is not reduced, Park assist will de-activate and the indicator lamp in the Park assist button will extinguish.

- As you drive forward, the size of potential parking spaces is assessed and displayed graphically.

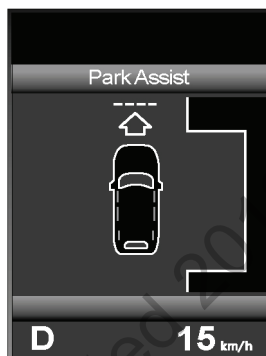


SL1693

- A short confirmation tone is given when a suitable space is found and a message to stop or to drive forward to a starting point will be given, depending on the vehicle's current position.



Make a visual check before starting the reversing manoeuvre to ensure that the space has not changed in any way, e.g., a pedestrian has stepped into the space.



SL1694

- An instruction to select reverse gear will follow. Park assist will then take control of the vehicle's steering system so you must release the steering wheel. Apply the accelerator carefully to move the vehicle slowly into the parking space. Use the foot brake when instructed to do so.

Note: If the steering wheel is manually adjusted while Park assist has control of the steering, Park assist will de-activate and the indicator lamp in the Park assist button will extinguish.

Park assist can be reactivated by pressing the Park assist button. While a vehicle with automatic transmission will resume the previous parking manoeuvre, a vehicle with manual transmission will not.

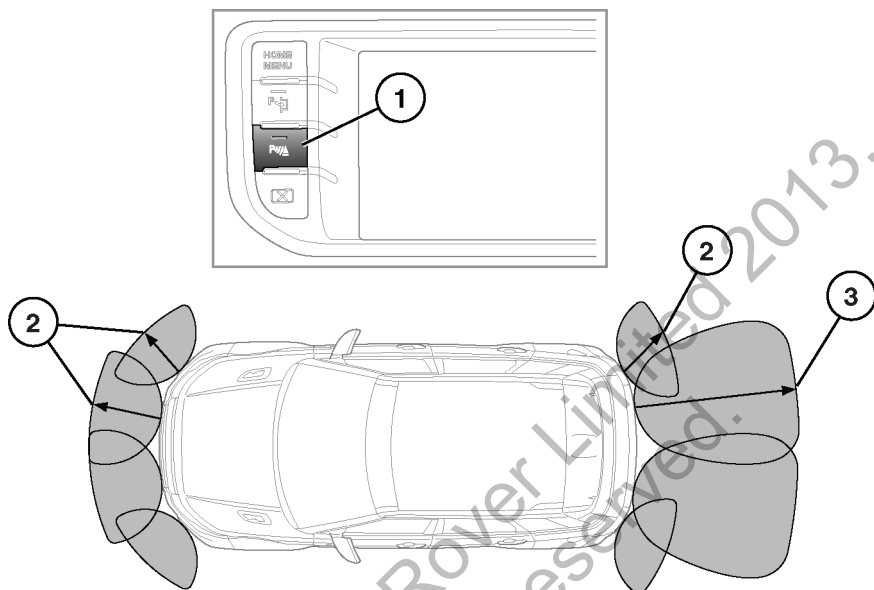
7. If further manoeuvring is required in the parking space, select forward / reverse gear and continue to follow instructions.
8. When the parking manoeuvre is completed, STOP will be displayed.

PARK ASSIST SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone will sound and a message will be displayed in the Driver information centre. Contact your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

PARKING AIDS OPERATION



1. Parking aid on/off switch. The switch indicator will illuminate.

When reverse gear is selected, the front and rear parking sensors are activated automatically.

To turn off, press the button. The indicator will extinguish.

2. Approximate sensor range -600mm (24in).
3. Approximate sensor range -1500mm (60in).



It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, chain link fences, small children, animals, thin obstructions or painted surfaces may not be detected by the system.



Systems using the same frequency band as the front parking sensors, may cause irregular tones to be emitted.

Front sensors will remain active as long as the vehicle's speed does not exceed 16km/h (10mph).

With automatic transmission, selecting **N** from **R** will keep front and rear sensors active.

When objects are detected, the parking aid emits a warning tone which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to the object and then becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300mm (12in).

Note: The front parking aid provides an audible proximity warning when driving forwards and when reversing.

PARKING AIDS DISABLED

The rear sensors are automatically disabled when a trailer with an approved electrical connector is connected or if a rear fitted accessory is within sensor range.

Note: Trailers fitted with LED lights will not disable the rear parking aids sensors. When reverse gear is selected, the attached trailer will be detected as an obstacle.

PARKING AIDS SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone will sound and the switch indicator will flash. A message will be displayed in the Driver information centre. Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

REAR CAMERA



It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.



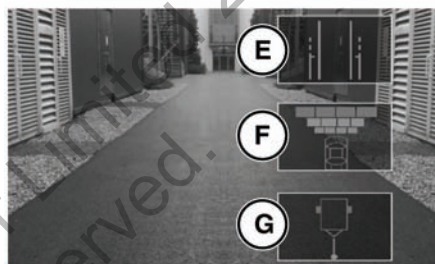
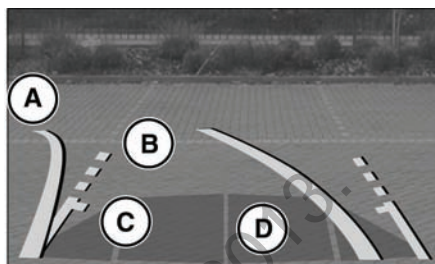
Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

When Reverse (R) is selected the rear camera provides a wide-angle rear view colour image on the touch screen.

The rear camera display has priority over the Parking aids display. To view the Parking aids display instead or to cancel camera display at any time, briefly touch the screen.

To adjust the camera settings, touch and hold anywhere on the touch screen to display the user options.

The display also incorporates graphic overlays, indicating vehicle direction, width and proximity to surrounding objects.



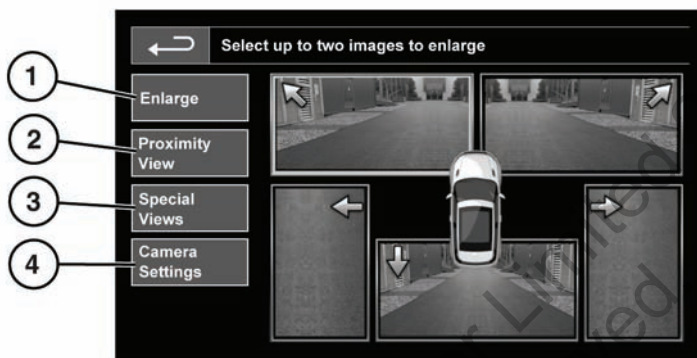
SL1071

- A.** Solid line: The projected path based on current steering wheel position.
- B.** Dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including exterior mirrors).
- C.** Tailgate access guideline: Do not reverse beyond this point if tailgate access is required.
- D.** Parking sensor activation: A coloured area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
- E.** User option. Touch to enable/disable A, B & C.
- F.** User option. Touch to enable/disable D.
- G.** User option. Touch to enable/disable Hitch Assist guidance lines. See **107, HITCH ASSIST**.

SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM

The camera home page is accessed from the **Home menu** screen. If **Cameras** has not been set as a short cut, touch **Extra features** to display the list.

With the engine running, the surround camera system uses 5 discretely placed cameras to assist in manoeuvring the vehicle.



SL1919

1. Enlarge:

To enlarge a camera view, touch the image then touch the **Enlarge** soft key. Any 2 images can be selected and enlarged to view side-by-side on the screen.

When viewing two images, one of them can be selected to view as a full screen image. It can then be zoomed into and panned around using the magnifier and arrow icons.

2. Proximity View:

Selecting **Proximity View** will display a combination of three images from the front and passenger side cameras.

Automatic Proximity View - Japan only.

When transmission Drive or Reverse is selected, the forward or rear view will be displayed. Once the vehicle speed exceeds 18 km/h (11 mph) or the return icon is pressed, the camera screen will disappear.

Note: Proximity view can be accessed at any time, by touching **Proximity View** on the **Camera** home page.

3. Special Views:

A selection of pre-set views can be displayed by selecting **Special Views**. They are provided to assist with difficult manoeuvres and are:

- **Kerb view:** Shows views from the 2 front cameras.
- **Junction view:** Shows views from the two side cameras.

4. Camera Setting - Japan only:

Touch the **Camera Setting** soft key to access the camera options page. To deactivate the Semi-auto camera functionality select **Off**. The Proximity view is now only accessible by manual activation using the **Proximity View** soft key.

HITCH ASSIST

Hitch assist is a user selectable touch screen feature that can aid the process of guiding the vehicle to the trailer tow hitch. Use Hitch assist while reversing the vehicle to the trailer hitch.

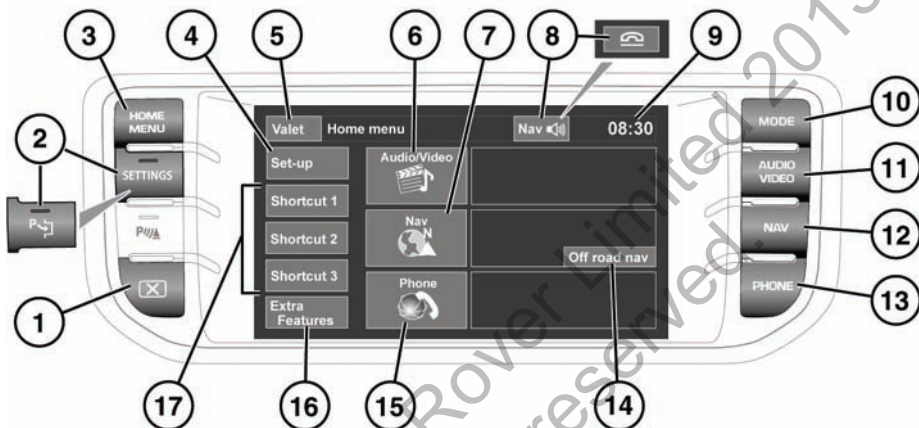
Proceed as follows:

1. Engage reverse gear. The rear camera provides a wide-angle rear view colour image on the touch screen.
2. Touch the screen briefly to display the view options.
3. Select **Hitch assist**. A single hitch line is projected onto the rear view image.
4. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
5. As the vehicle closes to within 0.6 m (23.5in) of the trailer tow hitch, an automated zoom feature is operated to enlarge the view.
6. Continue the manoeuvre carefully until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU

Note: Physical controls are referred to as hard keys. Virtual buttons on the touch screen are referred to as soft keys.

Screen options will vary depending on vehicle specification and set-up.



SL2119

1. Screen on/off. The first use after switching the ignition on will display the **Home Menu**. Subsequent switching on will display the last used screen or menu.
2. **SETTINGS**. Press for direct access to the settings menu. When Park assist is specified, the icon is changed and the button will turn Park assist on and off. The Settings menu is then accessed via the touch screen.
3. **HOME MENU**. Press for direct access to the **Home menu**. Content will depend upon vehicle specification and options selected.
4. Touch to select the **Set-up** menu.
5. Touch to select **Valet** mode.
6. Touch to select the **Audio/Video** menu. An overview of current audio/video information is displayed.
7. Touch to select the **On road Navigation** menu. Current set destination is displayed.
8. While navigation is operating, touch to repeat the last given navigation instruction. During a phone call, the icon is temporarily changed. Touch to end the call.
9. Time display. Touch to select time or date adjustment.
10. **MODE**. Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio/video sources. When Dual view is fitted, the button icon is changed.
11. **AUDIO VIDEO**. Press for direct access to the **Audio/Video** menu.

12. **NAVIGATION.** Press for direct access to the **Navigation** menu.
13. **PHONE.** Press for direct access to the **Telephone** menu.
14. Touch to select the **Off road Navigation** menu. Current set destination is displayed.
15. Touch to select **Phone**.
16. **Extra features.** Touch to display list.
17. Shortcut keys. Use for personal shortcuts to any part of the system. Shortcuts can be made in the **Set-up** menu.

TOUCH SCREEN USE



Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle battery, preventing the engine from starting.



Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touch screen.

Switching on

- Switch on the ignition.
- Switch on the touch screen.
The most recently used audio source controls will be displayed (e.g. Radio, CD etc.).
- Select **HOME MENU**.
- Select a source.

***Note:** Available sources will depend upon options selected at time of purchase.*

TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY ICONS

Some touch screen display icons are displayed on subsequent screens and may not all be displayed at the same time, e.g.



Back soft key: Touch to return to the previous screen displayed.

POP-UPS

Some menus and control screens will appear as pop-ups, overlaying the current screen.

Warning and information pop-ups may also appear on the display. Take notice of any warnings and follow any on-screen instruction.

HOME MENU

Press the hard key **(3)** at any time to move from the current display to the Home menu.

TOUCH SCREEN SET-UP

Select **Set-up** from the **Home** menu.

Set-up is divided into categories:

- Screen
- System
- Voice

SCREEN SETTINGS

- **Screensaver:** Select to change the screensaver. Touch an option to select.
- **Screen animations:** Select to turn animated transitions between screens on or off.

***Note:** While screen animations are on, system response time will be slower than normal.*

- **Time out home:** Sub menu selection screens can be set to revert to the **Home menu** after a pre determined length of time.
- **Theme:** Changes appearance of the touch screen soft keys.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

- **Button feedback:** Soft key confirmation tone on or off.
- **Clock adjust:** Select 12 or 24 hour clock. Set current time. Select **Date** to change the date, or to alter the date format. Select **Set**, to store new settings.

***Note:** The clock can also be adjusted from the touch screen time display.*

- **Home menu shortcuts:** Select up to three items from the displayed list to appear as shortcuts on the **Home Menu**. Select **Clear** to deselect highlighted items.

- **Language:** Select the required language. Select **Male** or **Female** voice. Touch **Change** to select alternatives for Voice and text displays. Follow the on-screen instructions to confirm.

***Note:** Some languages are not yet available for both System display text and Voice control. In this event, it will be necessary to select a separate language for Voice control.*

- **Volume presets:** Adjust volume for the available systems (announcements, parking aid, phone, voice etc.).

VOICE SETTINGS

- **Command list:** View the categories and the acceptable voice commands. Select an **Information** button to view alternative function commands.
- **Voicetags:** View the categories. Select a category to manage the voicetags for the chosen system. See **142, VOICETAGS**.
- **Operating guide:** View brief Voice system instructions. Select **Voice tutorial** for more detailed instructions (cancel via the displayed pop-up or by pressing and holding the voice button).
- **Preferences:** Select to alter the following settings:
 - **Voice profile:** The voice system can be trained to have a greater recognition of a particular voice or accent. The default setting is **Standard**. To build a voice profile for either **User 1** or **2**, it is necessary to complete a training program first.

To complete the training for the first time, select either **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on-screen and audible instructions.
 - **Voice feedback:** Select **On** or **Off**.

- **Feedback volume:** Adjust using the +/- buttons. It is not possible to reduce the volume to zero.
- **Voice training:** Select to access the voice system training program, designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user.
Select **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on screen and audible instructions. See **142, VOICE TRAINING**.

The training session can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button on the steering wheel. See **141, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

VALET

Selection:

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the luggage compartment. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touch screen, to prevent access to telephone numbers or navigation addresses.

From the **Home menu**, select **Valet**:

Enter a memorable four digit Personal identification Number (PIN). On completion, touch the **OK** soft key.

If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**.

If the PIN is cancelled, or incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again.

Valet mode activated is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

The luggage compartment is now securely locked in Valet mode and the Valet mode On screen is displayed.

Deselection:

When you re-enter the vehicle, touch the Valet button to view the Valet mode screen.

Enter your four digit PIN and touch the **OK** button.

Valet mode deactivated is displayed to indicate that your PIN has been accepted.

- The luggage compartment will return to the previously set security requirement.
- The touch screen will be enabled.

***Note:** If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

EXTRA FEATURES

There are more features available than can be displayed at one time. This menu allows the selected features to be displayed, for example:

- **Ambient lighting:** While the headlamps are turned on, select this feature to turn ambient lighting on or off. Adjust the lighting level to suit. Adjusting to the minimum level will turn ambient lighting off. Selecting Auto allows the vehicle to control when and how ambient lighting is used.

Extra features are displayed in alphabetical order. Use the forward or back soft keys to move to the next screen.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE



Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

The touch screen and inner bezel must be kept clean to maintain optimum performance. Clean finger marks with a soft cloth and Land Rover approved cleaning agent. Contact your dealer for details.

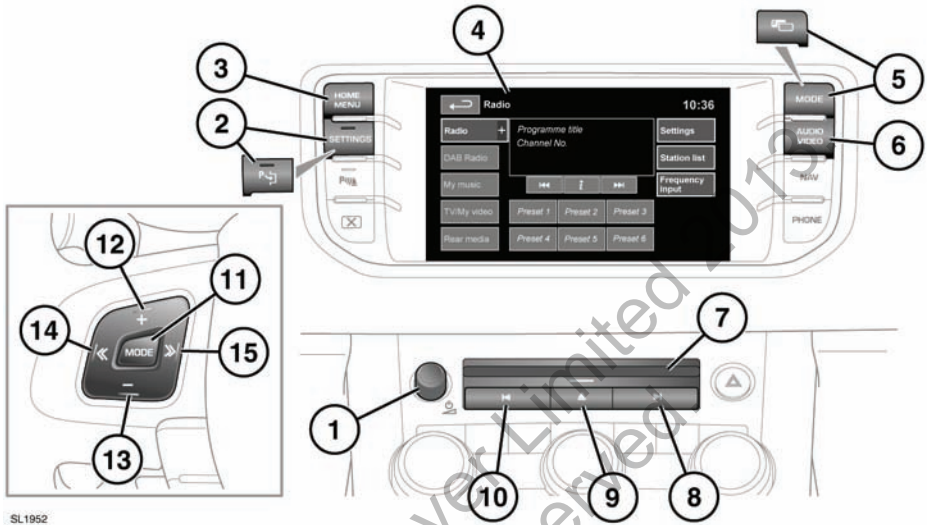
Avoid exposing the screen to direct sunlight for long periods.

Touch screen

When operating touch screen soft keys, use only one finger. Using more than one finger at a time may cause false inputs.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS



SL1952

There are two levels of infotainment with touch screen. The full system has the additional features of Stored CD and DVD, TV/My video and Rear media. Illustrations show the full system.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. Press to switch the audio system on/off.

Note: The audio system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will always switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the audio on again if required.

Rotate to adjust volume level.

Note: If volume is turned to zero while a CD is playing, the CD will pause play. Play will resume when a greater volume is selected.

2. **SETTINGS.** Press for direct access to the settings menu. When Park assist is specified, the icon is changed and the button will turn Park assist on and off. The Settings menu is then accessed via the touch screen.
3. **HOME MENU.** Press for direct access to the Home menu.
4. Touch screen.
5. **MODE.** Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio/video sources. When Dual view is fitted, the button icon is changed.
5. Dual view display. Press for Dual view screen display.
6. **AUDIO VIDEO.** Press for direct access to the Audio/Video menu.

Audio/Video options can include Radio, DAB Radio, My music, My video and Rear media.

My music consists of CD, Stored CD, MP3, USB, iPod and AUX.

My video includes CD/DVD, USB, iPod and TV.

7. CD or CD/DVD loading slot.

The player will accommodate one disc at a time. With the Stored CD player up to 10 CDs can be uploaded individually to the Stored CD store.

Only discs with CDDA tracks and no other type, can be uploaded to the Stored CD store.

Insert a disc into the loading slot until resistance is felt. The player mechanism will complete the loading.

8. Seek up:

- Short press:
 - to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station,
 - to select the next track on chosen audio source - CD, MP3 etc or,
 - to select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next DVD chapter.
- Long press:
 - to activate radio manual seek mode or,
 - to scan forwards through the current audio source track.

With radio manual seek mode activated, further short presses will change the frequency in single increments. A further long press will scan forwards through the current waveband until the button is released

9. CD/DVD eject button.

10. Seek down:

- Short press:
 - to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station,
 - to select the previous track or start of

current track on chosen audio source - CD, MP3 etc or,

- to select the previous TV channel on the channel list or the previous DVD chapter.

- Long press:
 - to activate radio manual seek mode or,
 - to skip backward through current audio source track.

With radio manual seek mode activated, further short presses will change the frequency in single decrements. A further long press will scan backward through the current waveband until the button is released.

11. **MODE**. Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio/video sources.

12. Press to increase volume for any source.

13. Press to decrease volume for any source.

14. Seek down:

- Short press:
 - to select the previous radio preset or,
 - to select the previous track or start of current track on chosen audio source - CD, MP3 etc.
 - when telephone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or phonebook entries.
- Long press:
 - to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station.

15. Seek up:

- Short press:
 - to select the next radio preset or,
 - to select the next track on chosen audio source - CD, MP3 etc.
 - when telephone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or phonebook entries.
- Long press:
 - to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station.

SETTINGS

To view the settings menu, press the **SETTINGS** button (2). When Park assist is specified, the icon is changed and the button will turn Park assist on and off. The Settings menu is then accessed via the touch screen. Each of the audio/video menu screens will display a **Settings** softkey.

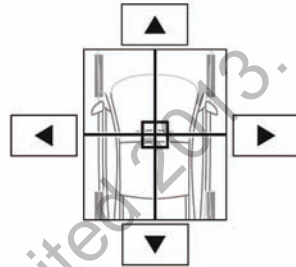
To adjust the audio settings:

- Touch the + or - soft keys to adjust Bass, Treble or Subwoofer levels.
- If surround sound is fitted, touch **DPLIIx**, **DTS Neo:6**, **Meridian Trifield** or select **Off** to switch surround sound off.

Note: Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.

To adjust balance and fade:

- From the **Audio Settings** menu, select **Balance/Fade**.



SJ1080

- Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, drag the focal point cross hairs to a new position.

LICENSING



SJ1580



SJ1534

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



SJ1533

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535; 7,003,467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



SJ1550



SJ1551

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



SJ1553

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are registered trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified device that plays DivX video.

Visit **www.divx.com** for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. To generate the registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in the device setup menu.

1. Follow the route, Home Menu - Audio Video - TV/My video - Settings - VOD.
2. An eight digit code will be displayed. This is your unique DivX code. Make a note of this code and keep it for future reference.

Go to **http://vod.divx.com** with this code to complete the registration process and learn more about DivX VOD.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.



SJ1530

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDb, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

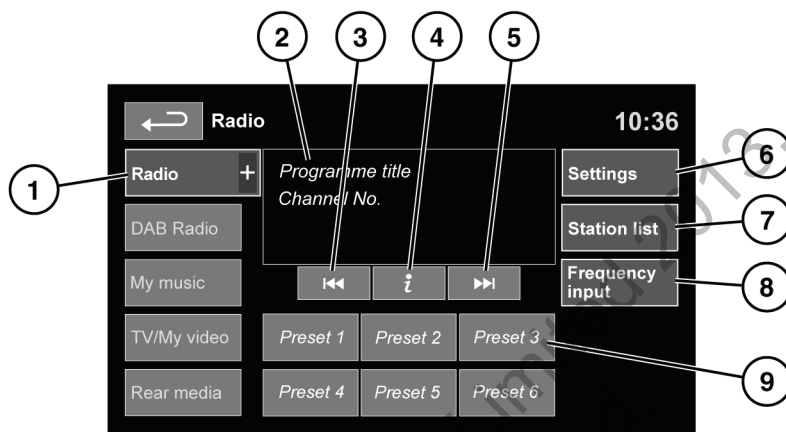
The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

RADIO CONTROLS



SL1855

See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.**

- 1. Radio:** Waveband selection. Touch to view and select a waveband. The radio will tune to the last used station on that waveband. Touch again to close.

The waveband selection box will close automatically after 5 seconds without use.

- 2.** Displays information about the current station. Some of this information is also displayed in the instrument panel.
- 3. Seek down:**
 - Short touch to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
 - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single decrements. A further long touch will scan backwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.
- 4.** Information. More information from the broadcasting station.

- 5. Seek up:**

- Short touch to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
- Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single increments. A further long touch will scan forwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.

- 6. Settings:** Touch to view and activate/deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic**, **News**, **AF** and **REG**. See **120, RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.
- 7. Station list (FM only):** Select to view a list of available stations on the waveband. The list can be sorted by **Frequency**, **Name** or **PTY** (pop, news, sport etc.), by selecting the appropriate soft key. Touch to select the chosen station.

If the stations are sorted by category, touch the chosen category to view and select a corresponding station.

8. **Frequency input:** Select to enter a known frequency of a station on the current waveband, using the numeric keypad that appears. Select **OK** or wait for 2 seconds to tune to the entered frequency.
9. **Station presets:** Each waveband has 6 preset positions.
 - Touch and release to tune to the station stored on that preset.
 - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored then beep).
 - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to change to the next or previous preset station.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

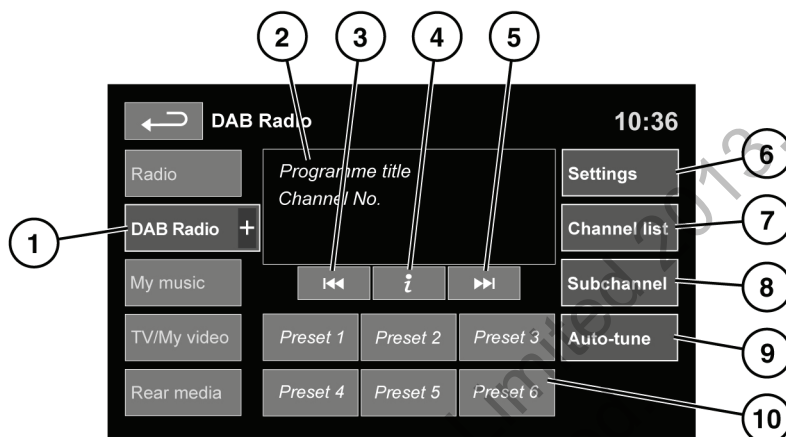
Your radio is equipped with RDS which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

Select **Settings (6)** to view or alter RDS settings.

- **Traffic/News:** Provides local travel or news information.
- **Regionalisation (REG):** Select to prevent the radio tuning into an alternative local station that has a stronger signal.
- **Alternative Frequency (AF):** Select to allow the radio to automatically re-tune to a stronger alternative frequency for the current station. This is useful on journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



SL1850

See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.**

- 1. DAB Radio:** Band selection. Touch to view and select a DAB band (**DAB 1, 2 or 3**). The radio will tune to the last used channel on that band. Touch again to close.

The DAB band selection box will close automatically after 5 seconds without use.

- Display showing the current channel, the associated Ensemble and relevant DAB radio text.
- Seek down:
 - Short touch to seek previous available channel.
 - Long touch to seek previous available Ensemble. The first channel in the new Ensemble will be selected.
- Channel information: Touch to view DAB text and channel information.
- Seek up:
 - Short touch to find the next available channel.

- Long touch to find the next available Ensemble. The first channel in the new Ensemble will be selected.

- 6. Settings:** Select to view the DAB Settings menu:

- **Options:** To activate/deactivate FM Traffic and Link DAB and to alter DAB country and DAB format settings (with vehicle stationary).
- **Announcements:** Select an alarm announcement and up to 3 other announcement types (traffic, news etc.) from the list. The selected announcements will interrupt the current programme when broadcast.

- 7. Channel list:** Touch to view a list of available Ensembles and channels. The list can be sorted by **Ensemble**, **Channel**, **Subchannel** or by **Category**.

- If an **Ensemble** is selected from the list, all available channels from that ensemble will be displayed.

- Sorting by **Subchannel** is only available when the current channel is broadcasting subchannels.
- If **Category** is selected, touch the chosen category to view corresponding channels, before making your selection from the list.

Once the desired selection has been made, select the Back soft key to return to the main DAB menu.

8. **Subchannel:** If subchannels are broadcast by the current channel, this soft key will be active. Select to allow subchannels then select the required subchannel with the seek down (3) or seek up (5) soft keys.
9. **Auto-tune:** Select to scan for all available DAB Ensembles/channels. This needs to be done before using the DAB radio for the first time.

Auto-tune is also useful when travelling long distances, so regional Ensembles can be tuned.

During Auto-tune, a pop-up shows tuning progress.

The Auto-tune process will not affect current presets, but some presets may not operate if the channel they relate to is no longer available (**No reception** displays).

10. **Station presets:** Each DAB band has 6 preset positions.
 - Touch and release to tune the radio to the station stored on that preset.
 - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored).
 - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to select the next or previous preset station.

Note: If you attempt to select a preset channel that is now unavailable or invalid, **No reception** is displayed.

DAB SETTINGS

In Options

- If the **Link DAB** setting is switched on and the signal strength for a channel falls below an acceptable level, the audio unit will automatically search other available ensembles for a channel with the same name.

If an alternative local channel is found, the new channel is played automatically after few seconds. If the channel is not found after a few seconds, the message **No reception** is displayed.

The word **Link** is displayed at the top of the touch screen when **Link DAB** is enabled.

- Select **DAB country** if you drive into another country. Scroll through the country options to choose the appropriate one.

This will prompt an auto tune.

Note: This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

- Choose **DAB format** if you move to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are;

- L Band
- Band III
- L Band & Band III
- L Band Canada
- L Band Can & Band III

This will prompt an auto tune.

Note: This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

DAB AUTO-TUNE

DAB radio can significantly increase the number of radio channels/stations available. The DAB signals are transmitted to most major cities, towns and motorway networks.

Digital radio is transmitted from regional transmitters. Some local channels are not available outside the range of their transmitters. If you want to listen to local channels as you move around the country, use the auto-tune function (AUTO) to build new channel lists.

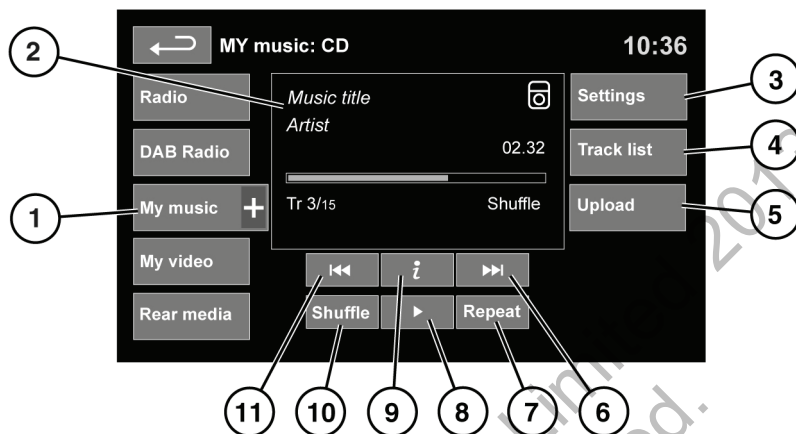
Note: *If any auxiliary electrical equipment is connected to the vehicle, then this may reduce the DAB radio sound quality.*

DAB ENSEMBLES

Unlike AM/FM radio, DAB transmits several channels/stations on a single frequency. A group of channels is known as an ensemble. Some channels within the ensemble may have subchannels offering several listening options.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be out of range of the ensemble. To build a new list of ensembles, select **Auto-tune**.

MY MUSIC CONTROLS



SL1851

See 108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.

My music includes CD, iPod®, USB, AUX and Bluetooth® devices. The full infotainment system also includes Stored CD.

1. Touch the **My music +** icon to display all options. Select an option.
Note: Sound quality and volume levels available from devices connected to the auxiliary input may vary widely.
2. Display of information about the current track, including elapsed run-time. Some of this information is also displayed in the instrument panel.
3. **Settings.** Select to switch traffic and news announcements on or off. Additionally, for MP3 recorded media, you can select the number of list entries that are skipped when you use the page up/down arrows when navigating a list.
4. Depending on the selected mode, this soft key will be either **Track list** or **Browse**. Where Stored CD mode is available, both soft keys will be displayed.

Track list. Select to view current CD or Stored CD track list. Select a track to start playback.

Browse. (iPod, USB and Stored CD modes only).

- Select to view the contents of the connected device which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
- Select a file to start playback (Browse view will remain). Select a folder or subfolder to view their contents.
- To return to the Controls menu, select the Back soft key.

***Note:** If an iPhone is connected via a USB cable so that audio can be played and it is also linked via Bluetooth® for other phone functions, the audio will only be delivered via the last connected USB port. This means that if the Bluetooth® is the last connection made to the iPhone, no audio will be heard through the speakers even though audio information is displayed on screen.*

To address this issue, disconnect and then reconnect the USB cable. Alternatively open the iPod application on the iPhone, press the Bluetooth® icon at the bottom of the screen and select Dock Connector on the pop-up.

5. **Upload.** Applicable to Stored CD menu only. Select to view and manage the CDs loaded into the Stored CD memory.

- Select **Upload** alongside an empty slot to upload the current CD. There are 10 slots available. Upload to Stored CD is available only when the loaded CD contains solely CDDA files.
- If the Stored CD memory is full, select **Replace** to overwrite an existing CD.

In each case a confirmation pop-up will appear. Select **Yes** to continue.

Note: Other features can be selected while upload is in progress.

6. Skip/Scan forward:

- Touch and release to skip to the next track.
- Touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track. Play will resume when the soft key is released.

7. Repeat:

In **CD** mode

- Touch and release to repeat the current track continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat track** is displayed.
- Touch and release again to repeat the current Stored CD (or folder for MP3 discs) continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat disc** or **Repeat folder** is displayed. This is not available if attempted while a CDDA track is being played.
- Touch and release a third time to cancel Repeat mode.

Note: Selecting **Shuffle (10)** will cancel Repeat mode, but **Repeat track** can be selected with Shuffle mode active (cancels the previously selected shuffle mode).

In **USB** or **iPod** mode

- Select to repeat the current track.
- Select again to repeat the current folder (USB) or to cancel repeat mode (iPod). Select again to cancel repeat mode in USB.

Note: Repeat mode is not available for Bluetooth® devices.

Note: Selecting **Shuffle (10)** will cancel Repeat mode.

8. Pause/Play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
9. Information: More information about the current track.

10. Shuffle:

- Touch and release once to play random tracks from the current CD, MP3 folder, USB folder or iPod playlist. A **Shuffle** message is displayed.
- Touch and release again to play random tracks from CD, MP3 disc, USB folders or tracks on the media device or tracks loaded onto the virtual store. **Shuffle all** is displayed.
- Touch and release again to cancel Shuffle mode.

Note: Shuffle mode is not available for Bluetooth® devices.

11. Skip/Scan backward:

- Touch and release within 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the previous track.
- Touch and release after 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the beginning of the current track.

- Touch and hold to skip backwards through the current track. Playback will resume when the soft key is released.

LOADING COMPACT DISCS

- ! Do not force the disc into the CD/DVD loading slot.
- ! Do not use irregular shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive labels attached.
- ! Dual format, dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal discs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming may occur.
- ! Blue Ray and other high definition video format DVD's will not function in this player.
- ! DivX Media Format (DMF) is not supported.

The unit will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification.

The unit will play Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs, MP3, WMA and AAC files.

Only discs with CDDA tracks and no other type, can be uploaded to the Stored CD store.

The full infotainment system will also play DVDs. The unit will play video files recorded in MPEG4 DivX or MPEG4 XVID formats.

The unit will play DivX 3, 4, 5 and 5.2 files. Version 6 will also play but this depends upon the recording settings.

Acceptable video media recordable discs include; DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD+RW, CD-R, CD+R and CD+RW.

It is recommended that only high quality 12 cm (4.7 in.) circular discs are used.

USB VIDEO

The vehicle system will play video files stored on USB 2.0 devices recorded in MPEG4 DivX 3, 4, 5, 5.2, 6.0 or MPEG4 XVID only.

MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

If an MP3 CD is to be used, each session must be properly closed after recording, but the whole disc does not have to be finalised.

When Browse is selected, the list of folders and MP3 files is displayed. Select a folder to view and select the tracks contained within.

- The highest compression rate supported, is 320 kbits per second (kbps). If anything less than 128 kbps is used, Digital Signal Processing (DSP) functionality may be lost.
- The CD player may take a longer time to load an MP3 disc, if there are more tracks than on a normal CD. To minimise loading time, a rigid folder structure is recommended.
- If a CD contains a mix of MP3 and CDDA tracks, any MP3 tracks will be ignored.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the cubby box. The portable devices that you can connect to the system include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g. a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod touch, iPhone and Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

Note: Auxiliary devices have no touch screen control.

If you are connecting an iPod or mass storage device, use the touch screen to operate and search the device. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD play.

❗ Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

Note: iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

Note: Some MP3 players may have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or approved iPod, you can control playback using the touch screen controls.

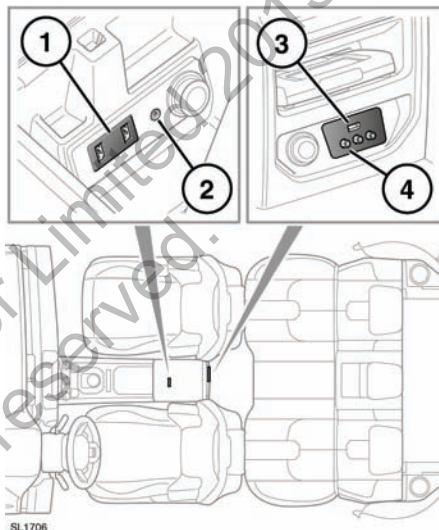
If you are using a Bluetooth® device, you can control playback using the touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

For further information on Bluetooth® and device compatibility, see **144, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.

❗ Land Rover does not recommend the use of a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in car use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING A DEVICE



1. USB/iPod sockets.
2. 3.5 mm AUX socket.
3. Rear media USB/iPod socket.
4. Rear media AV sockets.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

❗ Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

Note: A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Note: Options such as **Repeat** and **Mix** relate to the device currently playing, they will not apply to any subsequent device.

The 3.5mm AUX socket allows additional equipment (e.g. personal stereos MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the audio system.

The auxiliary power socket, situated next to the auxiliary jack, can be used to power or charge any suitable device.

Note: iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.

Note: On vehicles fitted with rear seat entertainment, additional Audio/Visual sockets are provided. This allows auxiliary equipment (such as a video game console) to be linked to the rear DVD screens. For installation information, please refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® MEDIA DEVICE

For further information on Bluetooth® and device compatibility, see **144, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

Using your media device

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your media device with the vehicle using the media device, will vary depending on the type of media device.

1. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the touch screen is active.
2. From the home menu, select **Audio/Video**, then **My Music**.

3. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.

4. Select **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: The vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discoverable for only 3 minutes.

5. Using the media device, search for Bluetooth® devices.

On some devices, this is referred to as new paired device. See your operating instructions for further information.

6. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing.

Either your device or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.

7. Enter the same PIN into the other device.

8. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed, before switching to the **My music**, Bluetooth® view.

Note: Some media players do not automatically connect and need to be manually connected, via the device or by using the **Change device** option.

Using the touch screen

1. Switch on your device's Bluetooth® connection. Make sure that it is in Bluetooth® discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the touch screen is active.
3. From the home menu, select **Audio/Video**, then **My Music**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
5. Select **Vehicle to device** option.

6. Identify your device from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

Note: *If more than 5 devices are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.*

7. When prompted, enter the PIN code into your device. See your device operating instructions for further information.
8. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the My music, Bluetooth® view.

Note: *Due to the duration of a Bluetooth® search, it is advised that the time-out to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for Bluetooth® devices. This setting can be changed within **Vehicle, Syst settings, Display set, Timeout to home screen**.*

AUTOMATIC RECONNECTION

If devices have already been paired and connected, when Bluetooth® is selected from the My music menu, the system will automatically connect to the last used device (a confirmation pop-up appears). If the last used device is not present, then the system will search for other previously connected devices and automatically connect if one is found.

If no previously connected device is found, **Please connect device** is displayed and the **Change device** option is given.

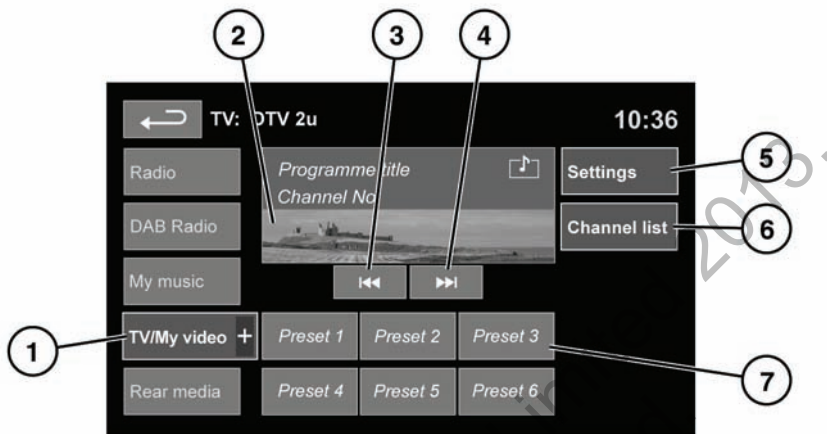
LOSS OF CONNECTION

If a loss of connection between the vehicle and the Bluetooth® device occurs, a pop-up is displayed. Select **Reconnect** to automatically restore the connection. A confirmation pop-up will appear before the touch screen reverts to its previous mode.

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

- From the menu, select **Change device**.
- Select **Disconnect**. A confirmation pop-up will appear and then you will be given the option to **Search new** or select a different device from the list of paired devices.

TV CONTROLS



SL1852

See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.**

1. TV/My video. TV band/video input selection:

- Touch the **+** icon to view and select either digital (**DTV 1** or **DTV 2 - Digital**) or analogue (**TV - Analogue**) TV reception, CD/DVD, USB or iPod.

When changing between analogue and digital bands, this will cause the last tuned channel on the new band to be displayed. When changing between digital bands, the current channel will be displayed.

Note: After 5 seconds without use, the TV/My video menu will close.

2. Preview screen for TV program: Touch to select full screen mode.

Short touch the screen again to view the controls and Electronic Programme Guide (EPG) information at any time.

To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.

3. Seek down: Select to view the previous channel on the TV channel list.

4. Seek up: Select to view the next channel on the TV channel list.

5. Settings. Select to switch Traffic and News announcements on or off, to select analogue TV or to select an alternative country analogue TV format, if necessary, when travelling abroad.

Note: Digital TV is not affected by a change of country.

6. Channel list. Select to view an alphabetical list of all TV channels currently available.

- A small preview of the current channel and program title is also displayed.
- Touch a listed channel to change the preview and title to the new channel.
- Touch the preview to view that channel.

Note: As the TV system is continually checking the availability of channels, it is possible for a channel to be in the list, but not actually available (e.g. when driving through different transmitter regions).

Note: After a country format change, the channel list will be empty until the system has scanned all channels at least once.

7. TV channel presets:

- Touch and hold to store the current channel as a preset. The channel name will then be displayed on the soft key.
- Briefly touch to select the channel stored on that preset.

Note: Stored presets contain information identifying the country where the preset was stored. When a preset is selected, the TV format of the country where the preset stored will be adopted. As analogue TV formats differ in different countries, this may create a situation where the analogue channel list is empty.

For information on the use of the audio/video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel, see **113, TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

FULL SCREEN VIEW CONTROLS

When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

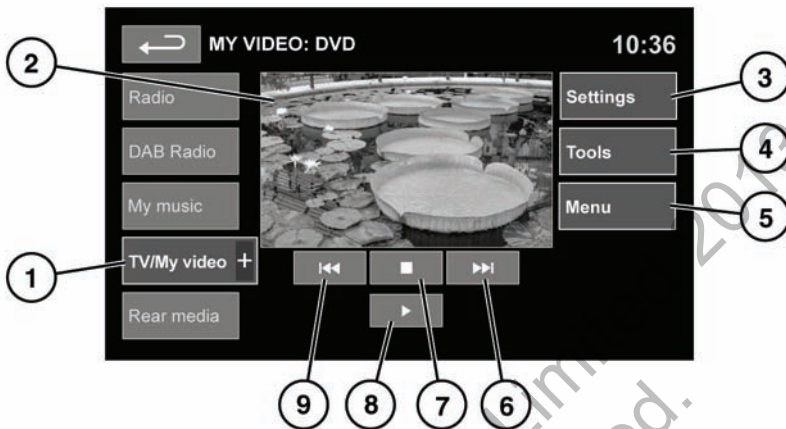
Display format: Use the relevant soft key to select the **16:9**, **Zoom** or **4:3** option.

Digital TV display format: The picture can be displayed in either the correct format as transmitted by the broadcaster (either **4:3** or **16:9**) or select **Zoom** to magnify the picture.

TV/MY VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving the video picture will automatically be inhibited. The touch screen will display the **TV/My video** screen and the relevant safety message will be displayed. If Dual view is fitted, a prompt for the passenger to activate dual view is displayed. See **134, DUAL VIEW TOUCH SCREEN**.

DVD/VIDEO MEDIA CONTROLS



SL1891

See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.**

1. TV/My video. TV band/video input selection:

- Touch the + icon to view and select DVD or other forms of video media (**CD/USB**), provided the relevant media is present. The selected option will be displayed.

Note: After 5 seconds without use, the TV/My video menu will close.

2. Preview screen for video media information: Touch to select full screen mode.

Briefly touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.

To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.

3. Settings. Depending on the video media specification, there are 2 sub-menus within settings: **Options** and **VOD** (Video On Demand).

VOD allows playing of DivX VOD content from a video media. The eight digit registration code will be displayed when the VOD soft key is touched.

The player must also be registered with DivX. See DivX information **116, LICENSING.**

4. Tools. The following options can be selected:

- **GOTO.**
The GOTO menu allows you to access specific parts of the video, by **Chapter** or **Title number**.
- Subtitles.
- Angle.
- Audio.

5. Menu. Select to view the video media menu. On some screens this may be replaced by a **Browse** soft key.

6. Seek up: Select to view the next DVD chapter or next chapter of the video media
7. Select to pre-stop playback. A second touch will stop and reset the DVD.
8. Select to start/restart play.
9. Seek down: Select to view the previous DVD chapter or previous chapter of the video media.

For information on the CD/DVD loading slot and the eject button, and the use of the audio/video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel, see **113, TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

DivX VIDEO ON DEMAND

DivX content is encrypted to ensure copyright protection. The content will play only on registered playback devices. See DivX information **116, LICENSING**.

When the registration process is complete, a DVD with DivX VOD content can be played.

After the first playing of DivX VOD content, a new registration code will be displayed. Do NOT use this code when purchasing DivX VOD content. Use only the original registration code.

If a DVD with DivX VOD content has a different registration code to your unique code, it will not be possible to play it. **Authorisation Error** will be displayed on screen.

FULL SCREEN VIEW CONTROLS

When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

Display format: Use the relevant soft key to select the **4:3**, **16:9** or **Zoom** option.

Digital TV display format: The picture can be displayed in either the correct format as transmitted by the broadcaster (either **4:3** or **16:9**) or select **Zoom** to magnify the picture.

TV/MY VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving the video picture will automatically be inhibited. The touch screen will display the **TV/My video** screen and the relevant safety message will be displayed. If Dual view is fitted, a prompt for the passenger to activate dual view is displayed. See **134, DUAL VIEW TOUCH SCREEN**.

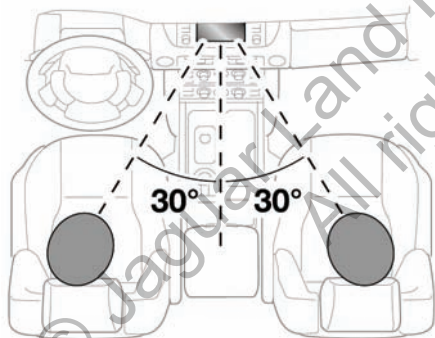
DUAL VIEW TOUCH SCREEN

Dual view touch screen option is a development of the LCD screen that enables the driver and front seat passenger to view two separate display modes.

Legal restrictions may not allow the driver to view moving images, as provided by TV and video formats, while the vehicle is in motion.

HOW DUAL VIEW WORKS

Viewing angles for driver and front seat passenger are such that neither can view the full display that the other is viewing. However, there is an optimum viewing angle of 30 degrees where no cross over of images can be perceived. From this point, the closer to screen centre or screen side edges that the viewer moves to, the more likely cross over of images is. During normal use of dual view, image cross over is unlikely.



SL1657

Rear seat passengers may be able to see both views when dual view is active.

DUAL VIEW SELECTION

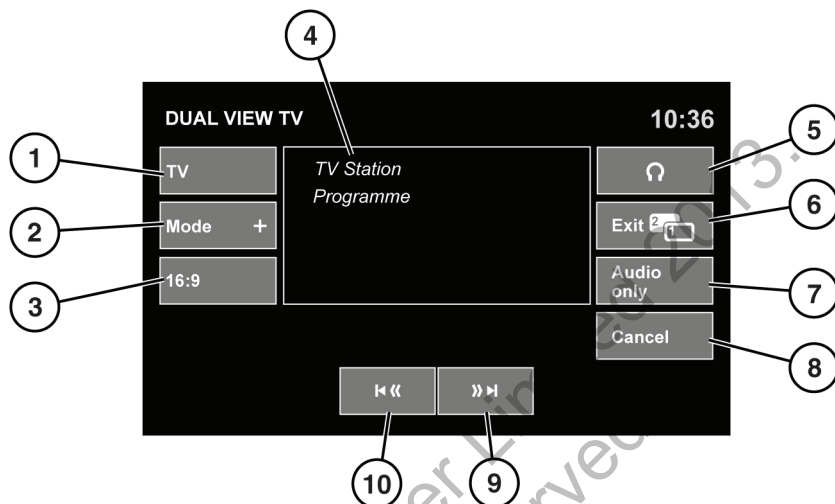
When the ignition is switched on or the audio unit is turned on after being turned off, single view mode will be the default view.

To select dual view, press the dual view hard key on the fascia surround. See **113, TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

Press again to display the dual view **Options** menu. From here, a change can be made to the viewing source or dual view can be cancelled.

If TV or a video format source were being viewed previously, the same source will be displayed.

DUAL VIEW CONTROL MENU



SL1967

1. Select to cancel dual view and revert to the menu for the current video source (TV, DVD).
- Note:** *The preview screen will be deactivated if the vehicle is moving.*
2. Select to view a list of all available video sources. Touch the relevant soft key to select an alternative source. The controls menu for that source will then be displayed.
3. Select to change the picture format (4:3, Zoom, 16:9). The next available format is displayed on the soft key.
4. Information on the current video source (e.g. TV channel and program name).
5. Select to switch the front passenger wireless headphone output on or off.
6. Select to cancel dual view: The touch screen reverts to the menu currently in use by the driver.
7. Select to retain audio for the video source while the display reverts to the menu currently in use by the driver.
8. Select to dismiss the dual view controls pop-up.
9. Seek up: Select to view the next channel on the channel list or the next track on CD or DVD.
10. Seek down: Select to view the previous channel on the channel list or the previous track on CD or DVD.

DUAL VIEW TV OPERATION

If you would like to change the TV programme while the vehicle is moving, there are two methods available;

1. Press the dual view hardkey to display the control menu.

Select an alternative channel with soft keys (9) or (10) then touch the preview image in (4) to return to full view screen.

2. Press the steering wheel **MODE** button repeatedly to select TV. Press the forward or back buttons to move up or down your preset channels. The channel number will be displayed and after a short pause the TV programme will display.

Note: Not all channels are populated with a TV programme. Some channels broadcast only at pre determined times whereas others may broadcast continuously throughout the day and night.

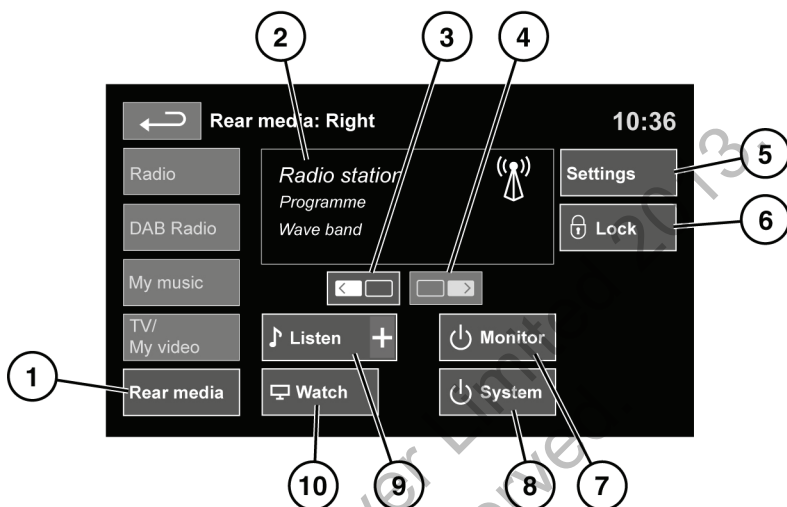
DUAL VIEW VIDEO OPERATION

When the video programme begins play, a root menu with information about the video programme and its content will be displayed on screen.

Note: Information and style may vary due to differing video media formats.

Note: If the chosen video media is CD or DVD, then a play/pause soft key is displayed between the Seek soft keys (9) and (10).

CONTROLS (FRONT TOUCH SCREEN)



SL1870

See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.**

1. Select rear media.
2. Current rear media display.
3. Left screen select.
4. Right screen select.
5. Settings menu.
6. Remote control lock. Touch to prevent selections being made from the remote control.
7. Turns off the selected screen.
8. Turns off the selected system.
9. Audio source select.
10. Video source select.

USING THE REAR MEDIA

Rear media consists of two screens. Separate programmes can be viewed or heard by rear seat occupants. Supervisory control is made from the front screen. Audio and video programmes for each or both sides of the rear media, can be selected from the Supervisor screen. The remote control can be locked out. While the Supervisor screen is displayed, the remote control will be locked out.



The passenger entertainment system should be used only when it is safe to do so. Do not use if it is likely to cause driver distraction. Driver distraction can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.



Always run the engine during prolonged use of the RSE system, otherwise, the vehicle battery may become discharged.

CONNECTING A VIDEO DEVICE

Inputs are provided for AV and USB 2.0 video media. See **127, CONNECTING A DEVICE**. Video files must be recorded in the correct format. See DivX information **116, LICENSING**.

Note: When a new video source is selected, the audio source will always be synchronised. However, if an alternative audio source is subsequently selected, synchronisation can be achieved again with a long touch of the relevant **Audio** soft key.

REAR MEDIA SETTINGS

The rear media settings screen allows **Limousine Mode** and **TV Parental Control** to be turned on or off.

When **Limousine Mode** is selected, the rear passengers can control the total cabin audio system via the remote control.

TV Parental Control allows an age limit threshold to be set. If the content of a TV programme is unsuitable, a message is sent to the rear screen.

Note: When TV Parental Control is off the age limit slider is hidden.

Note: TV Parental Control is not available in all markets.

REAR MEDIA CONTROL FROM THE TOUCH SCREEN

To switch on a rear screen:

From the front touch screen, select **Left, Right** or both, as required.

Selecting an audio source:

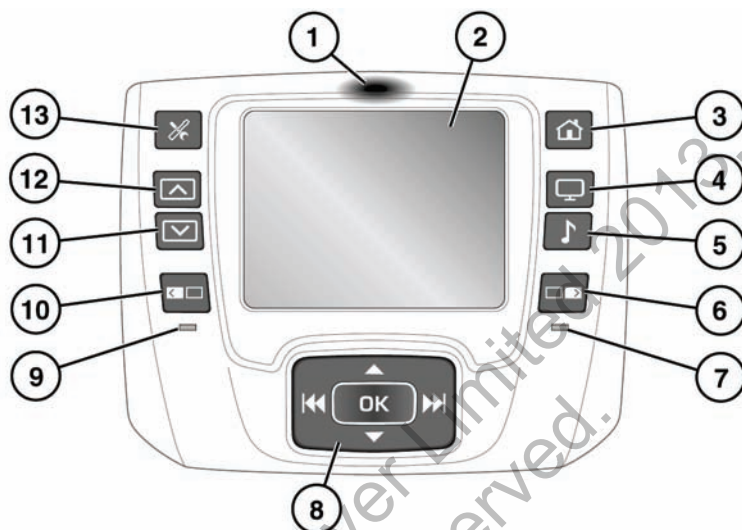
Listen (9) will display a choice of audio sources: **Radio, DAB, CD, Stored CD, iPod, USB** and **AUX**.

Note: When watching a video source, an alternative audio source can be selected.

Selecting a video source:

Watch (10) will display a choice of video sources: **DVD, TV, USB** and **AV1**.

TOUCH SCREEN REMOTE CONTROL



SL1871

1. Press here to undock remote control.



Do not press the touch screen to undock the remote control.

2. Touch screen.
3. Home screen.
4. Video source select.
5. Audio source select.
6. Right screen select.
7. Right screen tell-tale. (illuminates when right screen has been selected).
8. Cursor movement and option select buttons.
9. Left screen tell-tale. (illuminates when left screen has been selected).
10. Left screen select.
11. Screen brightness - decrease.
12. Screen brightness - increase.
13. RSE settings.

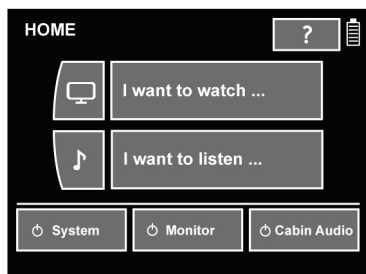
USING THE SYSTEM

The system is operated using the remote control.

To release the remote from the docked position, press at the top of the remote (1) to unlatch it.



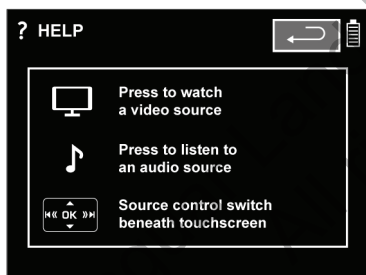
Do not attempt to pull the remote control out of its docked position.



SL1872

Using the appropriate button **(6)** or **(10)** or on screen soft key (right or left) to select the required screen, will allow options to be set and selected.

Note: A help screen is available from each screen/menu. To view the help screen for guidance on the available functions and options, touch the question mark (?) icon.



SL1873

Note: The earpiece exteriors must remain exposed to the infra red transmitter in the overhead console. Any barrier will prevent them from working correctly.

When not in use, the headphones should be turned off.

REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

The remote control battery is automatically recharged while the remote is docked. The battery is not serviceable and should not be changed or removed by the user.

HEADPHONES

The volume control for each set of headphones is adjusted on the headphones.

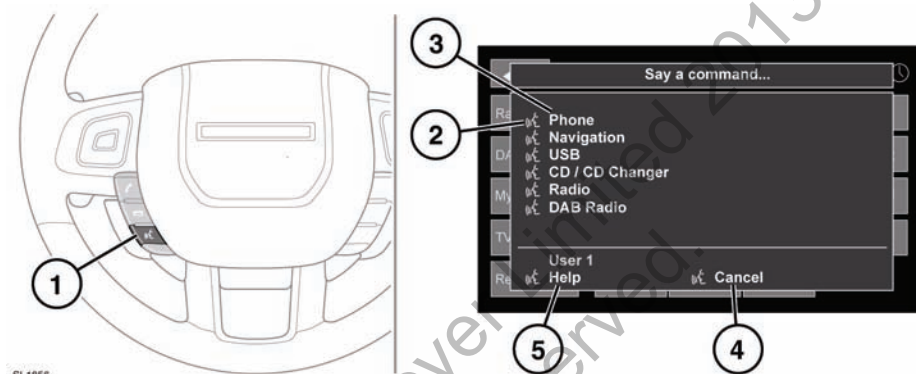
Press the channel selector button to cycle through available channels. Select the channel appropriate for the required screen.

Note: These headphones are not intended for use by the driver or outside the vehicle.

USING VOICE CONTROL

Note:

The voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, Land Rover cannot guarantee the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to your Dealer/Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice System for compatibility with a particular accent group.



1. Voice button: Press briefly to start a voice session. A pop up will appear on the touch screen. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.

Note: Briefly press the Voice button during a voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.

2. Voice symbol: Indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before using the command.

3. Command list: Appears on the pop up panel, providing feedback and available commands at each stage of the voice session. Say an available command.

Note: As the commands are listed before the system is ready to listen, it is important to wait for the voice symbol to appear alongside the relevant command, before using the command.

4. When displayed, say **Cancel** to cancel the current voice session.
5. When displayed, say **Help** to get assistance during a voice session.

Note: The currently selected user (User 1 or User 2) is identified at the bottom of the command list.

Note: If a listed item is longer than the available space on the menu, ...> will appear. Use the seek controls on the steering wheel to view the entire entry. See **113, TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS** items 14 and 15. Also see **165, STANDARD AUDIO CONTROLS** items 19 and 20.

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the Voice system:

- Briefly press the Voice button to start a voice session.
- Wait for the tone to sound, then say **Voice tutorial**.

Alternatively, the tutorial can be selected using the touch screen, as follows.

- Select **Setup** from the touch screen Home menu.
- Select **Voice** from the Setup menu.
- Select **Operating guide** from the Voice settings menu.
- Select **Voice tutorial**.

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICE TRAINING

This is a feature designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user, once the training has been completed.

To carry out Voice training:

- Select **Setup** from the Home menu.
- Select **Voice** and from the Setup menu.
- Select **Voice training** from the Voice settings menu.
- Select **User 1** or **User 2**, to start the training.
- Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

The training session can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the Voice system so that a single name can be used to call-up a navigation destination, telephone number or radio channel.

To add a Voicetag:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a Voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound then say **Phone, Navigation or Radio**.
3. Say **Store voicetag**.

Alternatively, Voicetags can be managed via the touch screen as follows.

1. Select **Setup** from the Home menu.
2. Select **Voice** from the Setup menu.
3. Select **Voicetags** from the Voice settings menu.
4. Select the system which the Voicetag is to activate (**Phone, Navigation or Radio**).

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

To request the display of POI (Point Of Interest) identifiers on the navigation display:

- Say **Navigation**, followed by the name of the desired P.O.I category from the following list;
 - Petrol station/Petrol.
 - Parking/Car park.
 - Land Rover Dealer.
 - Hospital.
 - Golf course.
 - Tourist information.
 - Restaurant/I'm hungry.
 - Shopping centre.
 - Hotel.
 - Motorway service.

- Town centre.

Icons will appear on the navigation display, indicating the locations of the selected POI. For further information about POIs, see **157, POI CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Ownership section of the Land Rover website at www.landrover.com, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The Bluetooth® equipped phones listed, have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.*

If the mobile phone supports Bluetooth® Hands Free Profile 1.5 (HFP 1.5), additional features will be displayed on the vehicle touch screen, such as battery meter, signal strength and network operator. Refer to the mobile phone's display to determine these items.

TELEPHONE SAFETY



Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.



Always stow your mobile phone securely.



The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (six inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range radio frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover Bluetooth® system supports Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

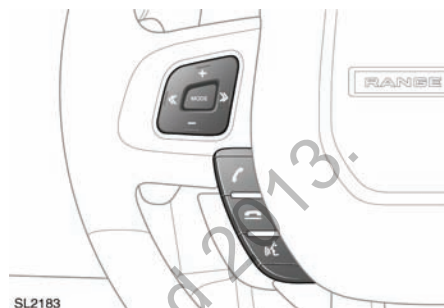
Note: *HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's Bluetooth phone system, your Bluetooth phone must be paired and connected to the vehicle system. This is done using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle or from the touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

STEERING WHEEL ICONS



Connect. Press and release to send or accept a call or to access the last 10 dialled list. Press and hold to access the phonebook.



Disconnect. Use to end or reject a call.



Voice control talk button.



Press to increase call volume.



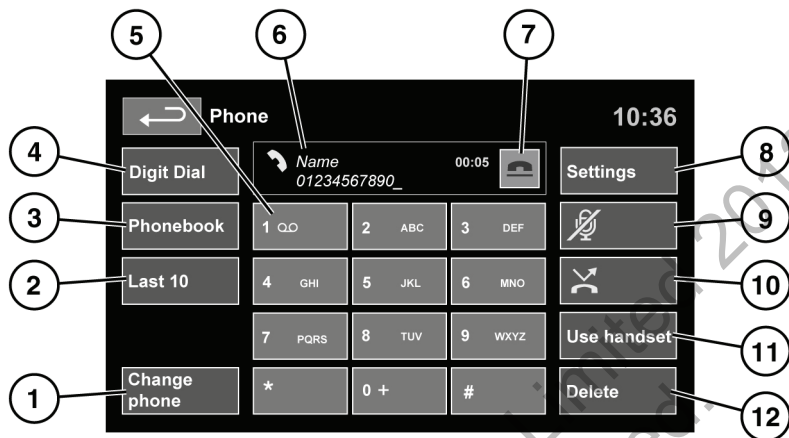
Press to decrease call volume.



Press to scroll up or down lists of calls or phonebook entries.



TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



SL1857

- 1. Change phone.** Touch to search new or change to another paired phone.
- 2. Last 10.** Select to access the last 10 dialed, received and missed calls.
- 3. Phonebook.** Select to access the downloaded phonebook.
- 4. Digit Dial.** Select to access Digit Dial mode.
- 5.** Touch and hold soft key 1 to retrieve your Voice mail.
- 6. Status display.** Displays the name and/or number dialled and call duration.
- 7. Call Connect/Disconnect icons.** Touch to send/accept or end/reject a call.
- 8. Settings.** Select to access; Voice mail, Answer options and Phone options.
- 9. Mute microphone.** Select to initiate Privacy mode. While selected, the caller will not hear you talking.
- 10.** Touch to activate/deactivate Auto reject. When active, any incoming calls will be rejected or diverted to voice mail (depending on mobile phone settings).
- 11. Use handset.** Select to switch the call to your mobile phone.
- 12. Delete.** Touch and release to delete the last entered digit. Touch and hold to delete the whole entered number.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MOBILE PHONE

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle using the mobile phone, will vary depending on the type of mobile phone used.

1. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the touch screen is active.
2. From the home menu, select **Phone**.
3. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
4. Select **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: The vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discoverable for only three minutes.

5. Using the mobile phone, search for Bluetooth® devices.

On some phones, this is referred to as new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.

6. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing.

Either the phone or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.

7. Enter the same PIN into the other device.
8. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

Note: Some mobile phones require the Bluetooth® pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

1. Switch on your mobile phone's Bluetooth® connection. Make sure that your mobile phone is in Bluetooth® discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your phone's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the touch screen is active.
3. From the home menu select **Phone**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
5. Select **Vehicle to device** option.
6. Identify your phone from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

Note: If more than five devices are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.

7. When prompted, enter the PIN code into your phone. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.
8. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

Note: Due to the duration of a Bluetooth® search, it is advised that the timeout to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for Bluetooth® devices. This setting can be changed within **Vehicle, Syst settings, Display set, Timeout to home screen**.

CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE

Up to 10 mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only one can be connected and ready for use as a phone at any one time.

To connect a different paired phone, follow the steps below:

1. From the Home menu, select **Phone**.
2. A menu will appear. Select **Change phone**.
3. Identify and select your phone from the displayed list.
4. Once your phone is connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

TOUCH SCREEN ICONS



Connect. Use to send or accept a call and access last 10 dialled numbers.



Disconnect. Use to end or reject a call.



No phone connected.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Bluetooth. Indicates that a Bluetooth® device is connected.



Tick. Indicates that a Bluetooth® device is paired.



Voice mail. Press and hold to dial the stored voicemail number.



Scroll bar arrows. Use to scroll up or down lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.

CALL VOLUME

The phone call volume is operated by the audio system's volume control.

If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio system source is suppressed for the duration of the call.

DIALLING

Once your phone is connected to the vehicle's system, Digit Dial is the default screen in Phone mode.

Using the on-screen keypad, enter the required number and touch the connect icon to send.

Note: When entering a number, you can change the phone number shown on the touch screen using the **Delete** button. A momentary touch erases a single digit, a long touch erases the complete number.

PHONEBOOK

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's phonebook each time the phone is connected to the system. See **144**,

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY.

Certain mobile phones store the phonebook in two different areas, the SIM card and the phone memory. The vehicle system will access only those numbers stored in the phone memory.

To access contacts from the phonebook:

1. From the Phone menu, select **Phonebook**.

2. Using the alpha keys, select the letter you wish to search under. Repeated selections of the same key, scrolls through the letters displayed on the keys.
3. Select **List** to view the phonebook.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list and touch to call. If a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

Note: It may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.

There are also options to view more contact information, by selecting the corresponding *i* key.

If your phone supports contact type data, you will be able to see a contact type icon in the vehicle's phonebook directory. These can be seen on the right-hand side of each contact in the directory and will indicate one of the following types:



Default



Mobile.



Home.



Work.

LAST 10 OPTION

Allows view of the last 10 calls made, received or missed.

Note: The vehicle will display the list in the order the calls were recorded. If this information is not available, they will be displayed as they are sent from the mobile phone. Some phones may arrange the list in reverse or other order.

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the touch screen and can be complemented by voice guidance if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the hard drive, to establish the true vehicle position.

Note: Mapping data loaded on the hard drive is relevant to the market in which the vehicle is first sold and will provide guidance and information only for that area. Your local Dealer will have details of software updates.

Using this combination of data sources the vehicle navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens and map displays.

SAFETY INFORMATION



Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers such as tunnels and roads under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

From the **Home** menu touch the **On road nav** soft key. Alternatively press the **NAV** hard key on the fascia. A caution screen will be displayed.

If the navigation screen language has not been set, now is the time to set it. Select **Language**, make a selection and confirm it by touching the **OK** soft key. You will be returned to the **CAUTION** screen.

After touching the **Agree** soft key, the touch screen will display the **MENU** or the screen that was in use when you last switched off the system.

Note: After approximately 12 seconds, the menu soft keys will disappear and display the map information only. This will show current vehicle position. Touch the **Nav menu** soft key to display the full **MENU** screen.

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **Nav setup** area. These settings are applied whenever navigation is used.

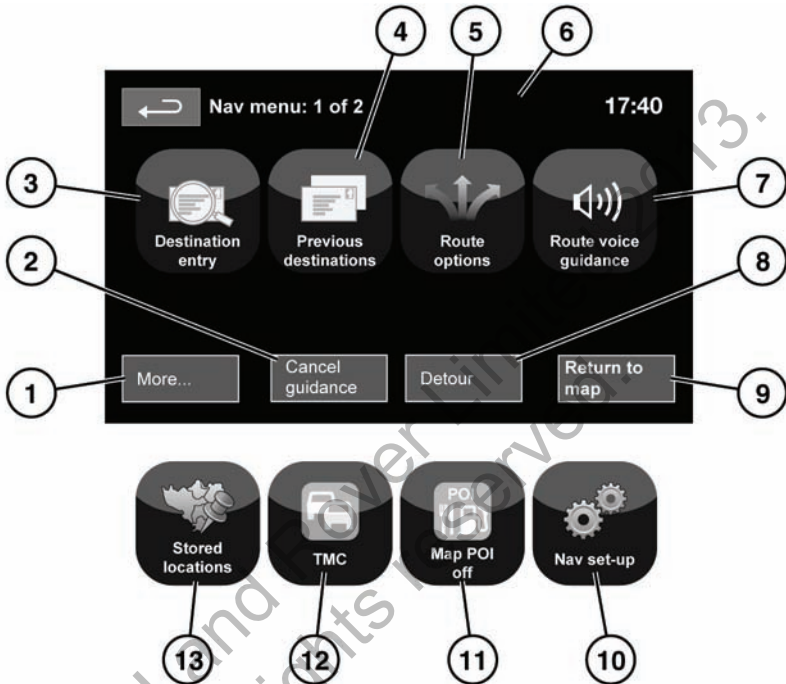
POSITION ERROR

Under certain conditions it is possible for the vehicle position shown on screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another destination.
- After the vehicle is rotated on a turntable.
- After vehicle battery disconnection.

NAVIGATION CONTROLS

Consists of two menu screens. Icons for the second menu are shown individually.

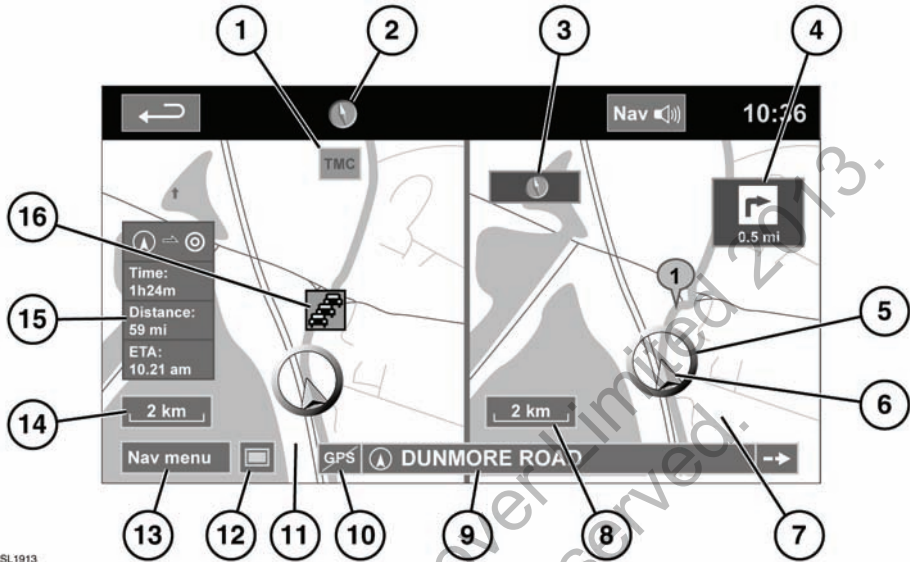


SL2118

See **108, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU.**

1. Move to other Navigation menu.
2. Cancels current route guidance.
3. Provides a choice of options for entering a destination.
4. Will display previous destinations entered.
5. Allows the user to select various options for the route.
6. When a destination is set, the Range Rover logo in this position is replaced by a soft key which enables the last voice instruction to be repeated.
7. Voice guidance can be turned off for the current journey. Softkey is highlighted while voice guidance is enabled.
8. Allows the user to take a detour from the current route.
9. Advances to the main map screen.
10. Settings for the navigation system.
11. Allows the user to turn off POI icons.
12. TMC (Traffic Message Channel). Not used for entering a destination but, when enabled, will provide data about road conditions and any events that may affect the journey.
13. Manage the stored locations.

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



- 1. TMC (Traffic Message Channel) information.
- 2. North is up.
- 3. Small compass display which always indicates North.
- 4. Next direction display.
- 5. Current vehicle position.
- 6. Vehicle direction arrow.
- 7. Split screen.
- 8. Split screen scale/zoom setting.
- 9. Current street location.
- 10. No GPS signal.
- 11. Normal screen.
- 12. Screen mode selection.
- 13. Navigation menu.
- 14. Normal screen scale/zoom setting.
- 15. Distance/time to destination.
- 16. TMC event (traffic congestion).

SCREEN MODES

Touch the screen mode selection soft key(12) to view a series of icons, each depicting a different screen mode (as detailed below). Touch the relevant icon to select the desired screen mode.



Full screen view.



Split screen view. A more detailed view of the local area and road system is displayed on the right.



Shows the next junction in the right half screen.



This view is only available when travelling on a motorway. It displays automatically to show remaining motorway exits along your route.



Shows list of forthcoming junctions and turn directions on the right half screen.

COMPASS

The map display can be set to always face North, or the vehicle direction arrow always facing towards the top of the map or to display in 3D.

Select the compass icon at the top of the screen to toggle between modes.

SEARCH AREA

The navigation map database is divided into countries, or geographically defined areas within countries, called search areas. When setting a route, the destination (or waypoint) entered must be in the currently selected search area.

Before attempting to set a destination or waypoint, set the correct search area as follows:

- Select **Destination entry** from the main navigation menu.
- Select page 2 of **Destination entry** then select **Search area**.
- Scroll through the list and select the three letter code that corresponds to the desired destination area.
- Select **OK**. The destination entry menu is shown and the information window shows the currently selected search area.

SETTING A DESTINATION

After touching **Agree**, the initial map screen is displayed, now select **Nav Menu**.

From the Navigation Menu, select **Destination entry**.

Select **Address** from the **Destination** screen and input the town name.

Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **List** to display all the possible towns.

If necessary, use the scroll arrows to the left of the list to search up or down. Select the town you require.

Now enter the road name. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **List** to display all the possible roads.

Select the road you require.

Enter the house number of the address (if known) then touch **OK** to confirm.

If the house number is not known, press **OK** - the mid-point of the road is then used as the destination.

The map screen showing the route settings and destination details is displayed.

START GUIDANCE

After touching **Destination**, the system will calculate the route.

There is now a choice to select **3 Routes**, **Change route** or to **Start** navigation guidance.

Touch **3 Routes** to display a choice of three different route options on the map.

The roads on the map are drawn in three different colours to highlight each route. Leaves are used alongside each of the three calculated routes to indicate the most fuel efficient.



E137155

Three full leaves is the most efficient.

Select route **1**, **2** or **3** by touching the respective box displayed on the right side of the map.

Touch **Change Route** followed by **Route prefs.** to change the route settings. If a destination is already set, touch **Waypoint** to add a waypoint in the journey if required.

When you have made your selection, if any, touch **Go**.

Note: As you approach a junction, in addition to the voice guidance, an inset on the map will display an enlarged view of the junction.

STOP GUIDANCE

To stop route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the map menu screen.
2. Touch the **Stop guidance** soft key.

EASY ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Easy route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, **Easy route** changes the calculation parameters of **Route 3** in order to reduce:

- Junctions.
- Turns.
- Turns that cross traffic.
- The priority of minor roads.
- Complex junctions and manoeuvres.

LEARN ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Learn route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, if you make the same deviation from the proposed route three times, then the system will memorise the deviation and offer that as the normal route from then on. Select **Reset all routes** to delete any learnt routes and return to the default settings.

VOICE GUIDANCE

To turn voice guidance on or off but maintain route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the map menu screen.
2. Touch the **Route voice guidance** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when voice guidance messages are enabled.

QUICK POI SELECTION

Touch the Map screen to display the POI button. Touch the **POI** (Point of interest) button. The screen shows six suggested categories, five of which can be selected as quick points of interest.

Note: The POI icons will not be shown if the map zoom level is greater than 1 km (½ mile).

Select a Quick POI category, or select **More** to see further POIs. Touch **OK** to confirm a selection.

The map screen with the POI icon(s) is displayed. Select the five POIs you wish to see when the Quick POIs are displayed.

RESTORE SYSTEM DEFAULTS

If you have made any changes to the system's default settings, use this menu to restore the original settings.

MEMORY POINTS

From the navigation menu, select **Stored locations**. This enables you to manage destinations such as, place of work, home, favourite restaurant or areas to avoid.

From the **Stored locations** menu you can save up to 400 memory points or add your home address.

Select **Memory Points** to add a stored location.

Touching any of the **Stored locations** submenus allows you to **Add**, **Edit** or **Delete**.

Select **Add** to store a memory point.

MEMORY POINT DETAILS

- Touch **Info**, to display the details of the selected memory point.

The details include Icon, Name, Position and Tel.

The telephone number can be called by touching the telephone button if a telephone is connected.

The memory point details can be edited from the **Stored locations** screen.

POSTCODE

Not all countries have this facility. Enter the postcode of your waypoint or destination from the keypad. The postcode must be entered precisely, including any spaces or punctuation. When the postcode has been entered touch **OK**.

EMERGENCY

Not all countries have this facility. Touch **Emergency** on the **Destination entry** screen to display a list of local police stations, hospitals or Land Rover Dealerships.

Press **Name** to display the list in alphabetical order or **Distance** to display the list in order of proximity to the current vehicle location.

Touch the name of the facility to set it as a destination or waypoint.

MAP

After selecting map, the local area map is displayed. Drag the circle to the area for your destination or waypoint, zooming in if required.

This location can be stored as a destination or waypoint.

COORDINATES

If you know the coordinates of your destination they can be entered from this screen. The full latitude must be entered first before the longitude coordinates can be entered.

When the coordinates have been entered, touch **OK**.

If the coordinates entered are not contained within the area covered by the available maps, a message will be shown. This can also occur if the incorrect coordinates have been entered.

PREVIOUS

After selecting **Previous** from the menu, the screen shows a list of stored previous destinations. Select your destination by touching the bar. The details will be displayed for confirmation.

Note: In some markets, list scrolling is not active while driving for legislative reasons. Only the items shown at the top of the list can be selected.

MOTORWAY

After selecting **Motorway** from the menu, enter the road name or number, then select an entrance or exit. All of the entrance or exit junctions for the chosen road are displayed.

The map showing the selected motorway and the selected exit junction is displayed.

The destination has now been set and the route is calculated.

POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

After selecting **Points of interest** from the menu, touch **Name** to input the POI name, for example, **Petrol** to display fuel stations on the map, or touch **List** for a list of POIs.

Alternatively, choose **Category** to see all categories of POI and make your selection.

Use the scroll arrows to change pages.

Some POIs are sub-categorised, e.g. selecting **Community** will be further divided into:

- Community Centre.
- Exhibition Centre.
- Hospital.
- Park & Recreation.
- Town Hall

Note: If entering a POI name results in too many matches being listed, try entering the town name first. If you do not know the name of the POI you want, try selecting a POI category.

Note: POI icons can only be displayed up to the 1 km (½ mile) zoom level.

Once the POI has been selected the route is determined. Touch **Change route**, to change the route settings, or touch **OK** to start the route calculation.

DEALER LOCATIONS

Details of Land Rover Dealers are held on the Navigation System hard drive as a points of interest (POI) category. Certain Dealers may be located in areas that are not fully mapped on the hard drive. If a route is set to one of these Dealers, guidance may only be possible to the nearest town centre; in this case a warning message will be displayed.

Note: If Land Rover Dealers (or certain other categories, such as airports) are selected, they will be displayed across all search areas.

ENTRY BY TOWN

If a town name is entered first, the points of interest listed will be restricted to that town.

- From the Input POI Name screen, touch **Town**.
- Enter the town name required.
- Touch **List** to display the list of possible towns.
- Select the town required.

The Input POI screen is displayed again.

- Enter the POI name required.

POI CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES

The POI database is divided into a number of categories. Each main category is further divided into a number of sub-categories.

The first entry in the list of Restaurant sub-categories, is **ALL**. This selects all of the Restaurant sub-categories.

To narrow the search, touch the **Town** button. This will display the alpha keyboard to allow the desired town name to be entered.

POI SEARCH AREA

When searching the database, only points of interest in the current search area are included, except for the sub-categories marked **All search areas** in the POI category list.

LIST SOFT KEY

The **List** button can be used when the characters entered reduce the possible entries to a small enough number.

You can also select **List** (when active) without entering a POI name. All the relevant points of interest will be displayed, e.g. in a selected town or category.

ALL SOFTKEY

The **All** soft key shows a list of all POI categories.

LOCAL POI SEARCH

This selects the points of interest in all categories within 32 kilometres (20 miles) of the vehicle.

- Touch the **All Local POIs** soft key.

RDS-TMC OVERVIEW

Radio Data System-Traffic Message Channel (RDS-TMC) is a feature that announces traffic hold-ups on your route as broadcast by radio stations that transmit TMC information.

Touch the **TMC** button on the Navigation Menu to access the TMC menu.

TMC events ahead on route can be displayed by touching the **Events ahead** soft key. TMC can be set to display on the map for all events, for major events or can be switched off. During route calculation, it can be set to avoid TMC events along the route.

RDS-TMC DISPLAY

When a TMC signal is received the icon in the top left of the screen will appear green. If a TMC signal is not being received, the icon will be shown with a bar through it.

The system will inform the driver of any reported roadworks, narrow road, contraflow, accidents, slippery road, diversion, information, parking information, congestion or other hazard.

The driver is informed of a traffic event as follows:

- A TMC Event icon shown on the map at the location of the event.
- Text can be displayed showing the details of each occurrence which can be selected either by touching the screen icon or from the traffic information list.
- Dynamic route guidance, which calculates an alternative route when the system receives the traffic event warning affecting the route currently set in the navigation system.
- Traffic event list shows all events sorted by road name/ distance on your selected route in a straight line or along your actual route.

The information regarding the hold-up is maintained and updated even if the vehicle crosses into another country.

RDS-TMC ICONS

Any traffic event (broadcast on TMC) in your area, will be displayed as a warning icon on the map and an alert may be displayed as a message giving the road number(s) and between which junctions the hold-up or event occurs.

This data is stored in the system for up to of 30 minutes.

The colour of the TMC icon changes in order to show the type and priority of a TMC event. The background colour of the icon returns to normal when there is no longer an event or hold-up, or if any re-route instructions are calculated.

The TMC Event icons appear on the navigation map display to indicate the location and nature of a TMC event.

TMC Event icons will appear on the map, even if the event does not occur on your route.

LEVEL 1 TMC EVENT ICONS



Incident (Red star)



Moving Tailback Ahead (Red arrow)



Moving Tailback Both Carriageways (Red double arrow)



Slow Traffic Ahead (Yellow arrow)



Slow Traffic Both Carriageways (Yellow double arrow)



Information (Yellow circle)



Incident (Yellow star)



Stationary Traffic Ahead (Red arrow pointing on line)



Stationary Traffic Both Carriageways (Red double arrow pointing on line)

Note: Single arrow icons indicate that the traffic event affects traffic travelling in the direction of the arrow. Double arrows indicate that both directions are affected.

LEVEL 2 TMC EVENT ICONS



Other Hazard (Yellow)



Roadworks (Pink)



Narrow Road (Pink)



Contraflow (Pink)



Accidents (Pink)



Slippery Road (Yellow)



Diversion (Yellow)



Parking Information (Grey)



Information (Gray)



Congestion (Red)

USING TMC

Dynamic route guidance will calculate an alternative route to avoid a traffic event when the system receives an event warning. The system calculates a new route for all sections. However, if any way points are set, the system calculates for the next way point. If the event on route is serious (closed road) or if the new route is shorter than the current one and the current one was not recalculated within the last five minutes, then a message to confirm the new route will be displayed. This pop-up message will be displayed for ten minutes and if the new route is not rejected, then the vehicle will follow the new route.

OFF ROAD NAVIGATION

If Off road navigation is fitted, select the **Home menu** then touch the **Off road nav** soft key. Alternatively press the **NAV** hard key on the fascia then select **Off road nav**.

Off road navigation maps are similar to the on road maps but have additional features and information, such as a large compass display, heading, altitude, latitude and longitude etc.

When switching to off road navigation mode during on-road guidance, the current highlighted route will be removed from the map and on-road guidance will be suspended.

Way points and destination icons will remain displayed. The destination is marked with a double circle.

When exiting off road guidance, the system recalculates the route and reverts to on-road guidance.

Note: TMC is not available during off road navigation.

NEW ROUTE

Allows the following route entry methods:

- Map.
- Previous.
- Memory.
- Distance and Bearing.
- Coordinates.
- Off Road Points.

Entering destinations is achieved using the same methods as in **On road nav**.

LOAD ROUTE

Load route allows a previously stored off road route to be recalled in the same manner as on road stored route. Touching the Load Route soft key will bring up a list of stored routes, touch the desired route to select. When loading a route, the current vehicle location is stored as the starting point, shown as the letter S on the map screen.

ROUTE OPTIONS

Allows access to the following commands:

- **Edit Route**
These menu items are identical in operation to the on road menus.
A maximum of 20 off-road routes can be stored. When the maximum is reached the **New Route** soft key will no longer be active.
- **Cancel Route:**
Allows a selected route to be cancelled. Touch the soft key to cancel guidance. All waypoints and icons will be removed.
- **Display whole route:**
The whole route can be displayed during guidance mode. It shows the total mileage of each section and updates as the vehicle position changes.
A backward or return route can be made at any time. All way point icons of the original route are reset and the system draws straight lines between them.
The original start point is now designated as the destination point and way points are numbered in countdown order.
- **Display way point list:**
Off road navigation way points are shown in numerical order. The nearest way point is the last in the list. A maximum of 35 way points can be stored.

During a forward route, the way point with the smaller number is nearest on the guidance display. During a backward or return route the smaller number is furthest away.

The bearing (e.g. R170) and distance (e.g. 1 mile) is a reference to the next way point. The bearing is the angle between the previous heading and the next way point. The displayed information is continuously updated.

While the list is shown, if the destination is reached, the system first changes to the map screen and then shows the pop-up for arrival at destination.

- **Skip Way point:**
While on a route this soft key can be selected to skip the next way point. Guidance will then be given to the following way point.
- **Trace Points:**
If **Current Trace Point** is selected via **Route Options**, trace point icons are automatically placed along a route as it is traversed. They are useful to backtrack along the route if required.
Adjustments to trace point operation can be made via the same screen. After selecting the **Current Trace Point** option, changes can be made to any registered trace point route.
Select one of the options, and make changes as required (e.g. trace points can be edited, renamed, turned off or deleted).

COMPASS VIEW

Compass view is recommended while driving off road. Select the map screen then the compass view icon at the top of the screen.

The compass can be viewed as 'north is up' or 'vehicle is up'.



North is up

- The compass North pointer will always be at the top.
- The vehicle position arrow in the centre will point in the current direction of travel.
- The coloured icon on the edge of the compass is the direction to the next way point or destination. It will always stay in that position.

Vehicle is up

- The vehicle position arrow in the centre will always point up.
- The compass will rotate as vehicle direction changes. Current direction of travel is shown at the top.
- The coloured icon on the edge of the compass will move with the compass.

ORDNANCE SURVEY DATA

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation System.

This is a licence agreement to use the Ordnance Survey (OS) Code-Point data incorporated in the Navigation System. By using this Code-Point data you accept and agree to all the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The OS Code-Point data is licensed by Ordnance Survey with permission of Her Majesty's Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright. All rights reserved.

LICENCE GRANT

OS grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the OS Code-Point data for your personal use solely as part of the Navigation System. You may transfer the licence to a subsequent purchaser of the vehicle with which the Navigation System is supplied, provided that the purchaser agrees to abide by each of the terms of this licence.

LICENCE TERMS

These licence terms are governed by English Law and are subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The OS Code-Point data is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise any part of the contents of the OS Code-Point data, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the OS Code-Point data.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

Ordnance Survey does not warrant or represent that any of the Code-Point data is accurate, error-free or suitable for your purposes. In no event shall OS or the supplier of the Navigation System using the OS Code-Point data be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages for any direct or indirect loss of revenue, profits, business, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the OS Code-Point data, whether in an action in contract or tort (including negligence and breach of statutory duty) or otherwise, even if OS or the supplier of the Navigation System has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event, OS's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of the copy of the OS Code-Point data. Nothing in these licence terms shall operate to exclude or limit any liability which cannot be excluded or limited by law.

THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS.

NAVTEQ CORPORATION

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation System.

This is a licence agreement for your copy of the Navigable Map Database, (the 'DATABASE') originally made by NAVTEQ Corporation), used in the Navigation System. By using this DATABASE you accept and agree to all the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighbouring rights therein are owned by NAVTEQ Corporation or its licensors.

LICENCE GRANT

NAVTEQ Corporation grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for use in your business' internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise substantial parts of the contents of the DATABASE, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this agreement.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The price of the DATABASE does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the DATABASE.

Accordingly, in no event shall NAVTEQ Corporation or supplier of the navigation system using the DATABASE ('Supplier') be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the DATABASE, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if NAVTEQ Corporation or the Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event, NAVTEQ Corporation's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the DATABASE.

THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS. Some states and laws do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so the above disclaimer may not apply to you.



The DATABASE reflects reality as existing before you received the DATABASE and it comprises data and information from government and other sources, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighbourhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

If the DATABASE is for a region of North America and is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, the DATABASE is licensed with 'limited rights'.

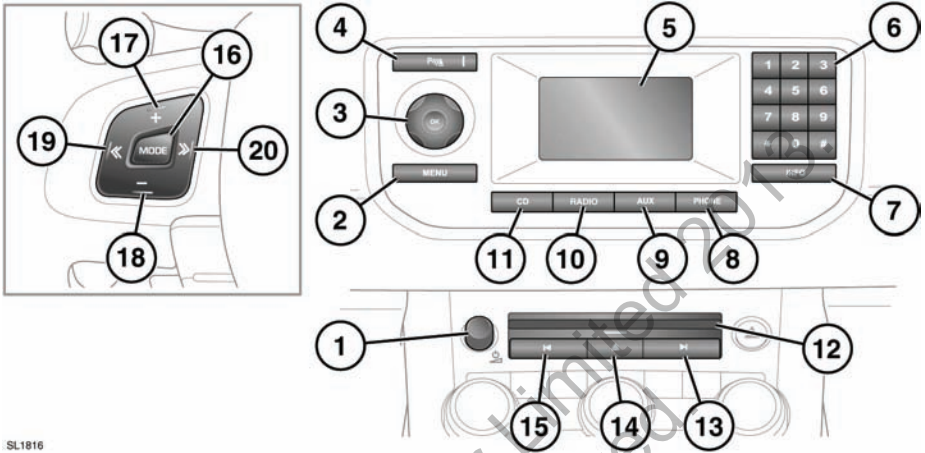
Utilization of the DATABASE is subject to the restrictions specified in the 'Rights in Technical Data and Computer Database' clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, or the equivalent clause for non-defence agencies. Manufacturer of the DATABASE of North America is NAVTEQ Corporation, 10400 W. Higgins Road, Suite 400, Rosemont, Illinois 60018, USA.

EUROPEAN DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DN-NS-019 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

STANDARD AUDIO CONTROLS



SL1816



Sustained exposure to high sound levels can damage your hearing.

1. Press to switch on/off.

Note: The radio will switch off automatically after approximately 10 minutes if the ignition is turned off.

Rotate to adjust volume level.

Note: The maximum volume level will be restricted if the audio unit is used with the engine switched off.

2. **MENU** button:

- Audio settings
- Clock settings
- Language

3. **OK** and navigation menu control.

Use the navigation control to move any menu cursor/highlight. When the required option is highlighted, press the **OK** button to select.

4. Parking aid.

5. Audio Information display.

6. Keypad.

7. **INFO.** Traffic/News information.

8. **PHONE** menu.

9. **AUX** input select.

10. **RADIO.** Waveband select (FM, FMAST, AM, AMAST).

When DAB is fitted, select for DAB1 or DAB2.

11. **CD** menu.

12. CD loading slot.

13. Seek up:

- Short press:
 - to select the next radio station upward in frequency or,
 - to select the next track on chosen audio source.
- Long press:
 - to enter radio manual seek mode or,
 - to scan forward through a CD track.

In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single increments.

14. CD eject button.

15. Seek down:

- Short press:
 - to select the next radio station downward in frequency or,
 - to select the next track on chosen audio source.
- Long press:
 - to enter radio manual seek mode or,
 - to scan backward through a CD track. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single decrements.

16. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio.

17. Press to increase volume.

18. Press to decrease volume.

19. Seek down:

- Short press to select the previous radio preset or previous track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to scan backward through a track.

20. Seek up:

- Short press to select the next radio preset or next track on chosen audio source.
- Long press to scan forward through a track.

ADAPTIVE VOLUME CONTROL (AVC)

The AVC feature adjusts the volume level to compensate for the changes in road noise as the vehicle speed increases or decreases.

Note: The AVC setting represents the volume increase and not the volume level.

If the AVC level is set to **zero**, there will be no volume increase. With a low level setting, the volume increase at speed will be minimal. If a high level setting is used, there will be a noticeable increase of volume at greater speed.

To set the AVC level:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **Adaptive Volume** then press **OK**.
4. Use the navigation controls to set the required level of AVC effect in the range 0 to 7.

TONE ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the tone:

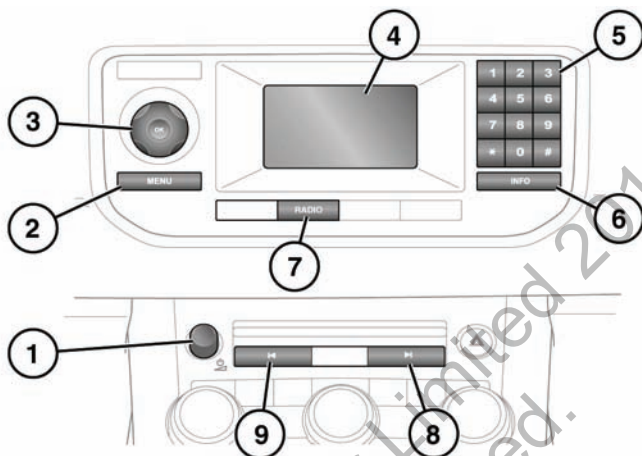
1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**. Settings for bass, treble, balance and fade can be adjusted with the navigation controls.
4. Press **OK** to store the settings and return to the previous screen.

Note: If no adjustment is made for several seconds, the display will revert to the previously displayed screen.

LICENSING

See 116, **LICENSING**.

STANDARD RADIO CONTROLS



SL2144

See **165, STANDARD AUDIO CONTROLS.**

1. Press to switch on/off.

Note: The radio will switch off automatically after approximately 10 minutes if the ignition is turned off.

Rotate to adjust volume level.

Note: The maximum volume level will be restricted if the audio unit is used with the engine switched off.

2. **MENU** button:

- Audio settings
- Clock settings
- Language

3. **OK** and navigation control.

Use to move any menu cursor/highlight up, down, left or right. When the required option is highlighted, press **OK** to select.

4. Audio Information display.

5. Keypad.

6. **INFO.** Traffic/News information.

7. **RADIO.** Waveband select (FM, FMAST, AM, AMAST).

When DAB is fitted, select for DAB1 or DAB2.

8. Seek up:

- Short press:
 - to select the next radio station upward in frequency.
- Long press:
 - to enter radio manual seek mode. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single increments.

9. Seek down:

- Short press:
 - to select the next radio station downward in frequency.
- Long press:
 - to enter radio manual seek mode. In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single decrements.

AUTO STORING RADIO STATIONS

AutoStore can be used to store the stations with the strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband.

Using Autostore:

1. Press the **RADIO (7)** button to select the desired waveband.
2. Find a station. If necessary, use the seek buttons (**8** and **9**).
3. Press and hold the **RADIO (7)** button until the display confirms that Autostore is in progress.

The system will search for stations with the strongest signals on the selected waveband. While the search is in progress, volume is muted.

When the search is complete, the previous volume level will be restored. The radio will switch to the FM-AST or AM-AST waveband where the strongest signal stations have been stored on the Autostore presets.

Note: Autostore will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available and overwrite the previously stored stations.

Note: The Autostore waveband can also be used to store stations manually, in the same way as other wavebands.

RADIO STATION PRESETS

This feature allows favourite stations to be stored so that they can be recalled later.

1. With the **RADIO (7)** button, select a waveband.
2. Tune to the required station. The station will begin play.
3. Press and hold one of the keypad buttons.
4. The station will be stored. Volume will mute momentarily as confirmation.
5. Release the button.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each keypad button.

Note: When driving to another area of the country, FM stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency for that area.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

Your audio unit is equipped with RDS, which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with the normal radio signals.

On the FM waveband, RDS enables the audio to receive traffic and news information broadcasts. RDS also allows the audio to automatically re-tune to stations that are linked to the same network, if that network allows this.

Note: Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS. If a non-RDS station is selected, RDS features will not be available.

REGIONALISATION (REG)

As you drive into different radio reception areas, RDS automatically re-tunes the radio to the strongest signal. When REG is on, the tuner is locked to the current local radio station. With REG switched off, the tuner is allowed to switch to a stronger Enhanced Other Network (EON) when the current EON linked radio station signal becomes weak.

To turn REG on:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **Regionalisation**.
4. Press **OK** to enable or disable REG.

ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCY (AF)

Some radio stations broadcast on different frequencies in different parts of the country. If the selected station signal weakens, the radio will automatically re-tune to a stronger Alternative Frequency (AF), if one is available. This feature is particularly useful on long journeys, where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas serving the same radio station.

To enable/disable AF:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **ALTERNAT.FREQ.** Turn AF on or off.
4. Press **OK**.

SELECTING TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Normal reception can be interrupted to broadcast traffic information from stations on the FM waveband using the Radio Data System (RDS) and Enhanced Other Network (EON) links.

When a radio station capable of providing traffic information is selected, the **TP** indicator appears on the top line of the display.

Briefly press the **INFO (6)** button to select the Traffic Announcement (TA) function. The **TA** indicator appears on the top line of the display.

As soon as a traffic announcement is received, current audio entertainment is interrupted and **Traffic** appears in the display, along with the name of the station providing the information.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** is turned off, then on again.

To cancel a Traffic announcement, briefly press the **INFO** button, or alternatively the **MODE**

button on the steering wheel, during the announcement. This will not turn off **TA**.

To deselect the TA function, briefly press the **INFO** button again. The **TA** indicator will disappear from the display.

TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENT VOLUME

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes. To adjust the volume of traffic announcements, use the volume control during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

All subsequent traffic announcements will be at the set volume.

SELECTING NEWS INFORMATION

Normal reception can be interrupted to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband using the Radio Data System (RDS) and Enhanced Other Network (EON) links, in the same way that traffic information is provided.

To set the NEWS feature:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **News**.
4. Press **OK** to enable or disable the News feature.

To cancel a News announcement, briefly press the **INFO** button, or alternatively the **MODE** button on the steering wheel, during the announcement. Select **INFO** again to turn off the News feature.

Note: Both traffic and news information can be selected at the same time. However, the radio will always give priority to traffic information.

TIME AND DATE SETTINGS

1. Press the MENU (2) button.
2. Select **Clock settings**.
3. Select a clock function.
4. Once the change has been entered, press **OK**

LANGUAGE SELECTION

To select a display language:

1. Press the MENU (2) button.
2. Select **Language**.
3. Once the change has been entered, press **OK**

DIGITAL (DAB) RADIO

If your vehicle is equipped for digital radio, press the **RADIO(7)** button to select either of two groups DAB1 or DAB2. These two groups permit the storing of a total of 20 preset stations or 'services' (ten in each group) using the buttons 0-9 on the keypad (5).

DAB radio can significantly increase the number of radio stations available. The DAB signals are transmitted to most major cities, towns and motorway networks.

Unlike AM/FM radio, digital transmits several services on a single frequency. This group of services is known as an ensemble. There may be a number of ensembles receivable in some areas, each typically carrying between six and twelve services.

Digital radio is transmitted from regional and local transmitters. Some services are national or regional and are replicated on multiple transmitters throughout the region or country. Other services are local and only available within a limited range of one transmitter.

FINDING DIGITAL SERVICES

Press the seek buttons (8 or 9) to search the waveband to find the local active ensembles. Note: Alternatively the steering wheel seek buttons can perform the same function.

The national channels use the same ensembles throughout a country and so there is usually no need to search for these. If you have stored your favourite national channels already then they will usually be found immediately on the same pre-set buttons.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be moving out of range of the ensemble. Use the seek buttons (8 or 9) buttons to search for services which are stronger in that area.

***Note:** If any auxiliary electrical equipment is connected to the vehicle, DAB radio reception capability may be reduced.*

SELECTING AND STORING DIGITAL SERVICES

Select DAB1 or DAB2. In each band the active station will be the last one used. To select another station, press the appropriate preset button (0 to 9).

Any preset can be used to store any Digital Radio service, from any ensemble. If you switch between presets which are on different ensembles, the tuning time can take a few seconds (the word '**Searching....**' briefly appears on the screen). Switching between services within the same ensemble is virtually immediate.

If there is no service stored on a pre-set, or if the service is not receivable at the current location, the message '**No Reception**' will be displayed.

If the service you want is not already stored in a preset button or cannot be received, then you can step through the other services in the current ensemble by repeated short presses on the Seek-up or Seek-down buttons. At the end of the ensemble, a further press will show '**Searching....**' for a few seconds and then the next ensemble will be shown. You can then step through each service in this new ensemble by repeated short presses as above.

To store a service on a preset: While playing the desired service, press and hold the desired preset button. A bar-graph will show, indicating how long you need to hold the button, followed by a 'Preset Stored' pop-up message. Now release the button.

DAB SERVICE LIST

A quick way to see all the services available on the presets and all the other services which may be received in the current ensemble is to use the navigation control (3) to go to the waveband list, select either DAB1 or DAB2, then the right navigation button to list the presets of DAB1 or DAB2. If the desired station is not listed, there is a **Service List** option at the top of the list. Scroll up to the **Service List** item and press the right navigation button to see all the services of the current ensemble listed. Use the navigation control up/down buttons to scroll up and down the list. If you want to select a service, scroll the outline box onto the desired service and press **OK**.

DAB MANUAL TUNING

Press and hold the seek-up or seek-down buttons for approximately 3 seconds to enter **Manual Tuning**. The **Manual Tuning** pop-up will appear on the display. Using the seek-up or seek-down buttons you can then move through all the services and ensembles in turn.

If an ensemble is empty or not receivable then the tuning will move along to the next. If an ensemble is only just strong enough to receive but the services are too weak to use, the tuning may stop on that ensemble and display the ensemble's name, and possibly the service's name, but without sound. If no sound is heard within 5 to 10 seconds then press the appropriate seek button again to move onto the next useable ensemble.

To select and play a service of your choice, locate it and ensure that the audio is receivable, then press **OK**.

The **Manual Tuning** mode allows up to 30 seconds of inactivity before it times out. If **Manual Tuning** times out with no new service tuned, the radio will revert to the service you were tuned to at the start of your Manual Tuning session.

SERVICELINK

ServiceLink is an item on the Menu (2) and can be enabled or disabled using the **OK** button.

When ServiceLink is enabled, two additional features come in to operation:

- If you are listening to a local service which has a partner service in an adjacent area, when the signal weakens it will automatically changeover to new area's partner service.
- If you have selected a digital service which has an equivalent FM service in the area and your digital service has deteriorated, then the radio will automatically switch to the alternative FM service until the digital reception becomes adequate again.

We advise that ServiceLink is switched off when searching for ensembles or using Manual Tuning.

DAB DISPLAYED MESSAGES

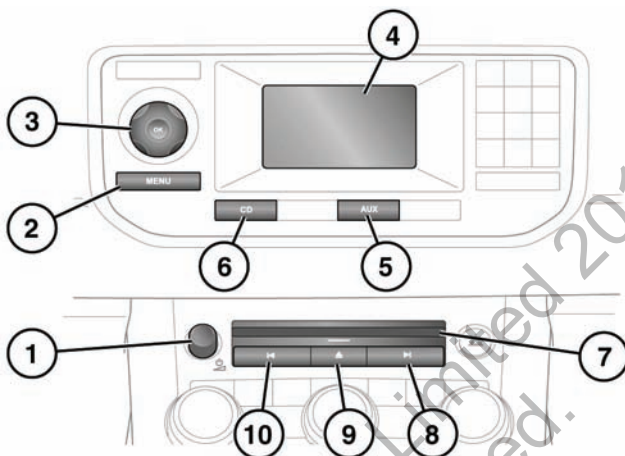
'**Searching....**' is displayed when the radio is tuning itself to the correct ensemble. You will see this for a few seconds during some preset changes, and when seeking up or down to another ensemble.

If ServiceLink is enabled and no alternative signal can be found, 'Searching....' may show for a long period of time since in this mode the radio will continue to search round all the bands automatically until you command it to go to a different service or switch off ServiceLink.

'**No Reception**' is displayed when ServiceLink is not enabled and you have selected a service which cannot be received in the vehicle's current position. Select an alternative service, or search for an alternative ensemble.

'**Serv00**', '**Serv01**' etc. may be shown when the radio can detect signals from an ensemble but cannot decode the service names. These are default labels to replace the non-receivable service names. In these cases the audio is generally impossible to receive from the vehicle's current location. Select an alternative service, or search for an alternative ensemble.

STANDARD PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



SL2121

1. Press to switch on/off. Rotate to adjust volume level.
2. **MENU** button:
 - Audio settings
3. **OK** and navigation control.
Use to move any menu cursor/highlight up, down, left or right. When the required option is highlighted, press **OK** to select.
4. Audio Information display.
5. **AUX** input select. Use when a portable device is connected.
6. **CD** menu.
7. CD loading slot.
8. Seek up:
 - Short press:
 - to select the next track on chosen audio source.
 - Long press:
 - to scan forward through a CD track or MP3 folder.
9. CD eject button.
10. Seek down:
 - Short press:
 - to select the next track on chosen audio source.
 - Long press:
 - to scan backward through a CD track or MP3 folder.

LOADING A COMPACT DISC



Do not use discs with paper labels, dual discs or DVDPlus discs. The front loading CD player may load and play this type of disc, however it is likely that the disc will not eject and will block the CD mechanism. Such damage to a CD player will not be covered under warranty.



Do not force the disc into the CD loading slot.

Note: Copy-protected CDs may fail to play in your CD player or may be played subject to various limitations (e.g. sound quality may be impaired). If you experience a problem, try the CD in other players before contacting the CD vendor.

The unit will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification.

The unit will play Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs, MP3, WMA and AAC files.

It is recommended that only high quality 12 cm (4.7 in.) circular discs are used.

Gently place a CD into the loading slot, the disc will be drawn into the player and begin play.

If a CD is already loaded, playback will resume from the point of last play.

TRACK SELECTION

When playing a CD, the display will show the current track being played and the time elapsed since the current track began to play.

To select a CD track for play:

1. Use the navigation control **(3)** right button to access the track list of the currently playing CD.
2. Use the navigation control up or down buttons to scroll to a track.

3. Press **OK** to select the track for play.

REPEAT AND SHUFFLE

Repeat will play the current track repeatedly. Shuffle alters the playback order for the current CD, so that tracks are played in a random sequence.

To turn Repeat or Shuffle on when a CD is playing:

1. Press the **MENU (2)** button.
2. Select **Audio Settings**.
3. Select **Repeat** or **Shuffle**.
4. Press **OK**.

MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

MP3 discs have the potential to hold more music than a conventional CD, because each track can be compressed to a greater degree during recording.

If an MP3 CD is to be used, each session must be properly closed after recording but the whole disc does not have to be finalised.

The highest compression rate supported, is 320 kbits per second (kbps). If anything less than 128 kbps is used, Digital Signal Processing (DSP) functionality may be lost.

The normal playing sequence on CDs with multiple folders, is to play the tracks within the top level first, then the tracks in any sub-folders.

If a CD contains a mixture of MP3 and CDDA tracks, any MP3 tracks will be ignored.

1. Use the navigation control **(3)** right button to access the track list of the currently playing folder. Use the left button to access the folder list.
2. Use the navigation control up or down buttons to scroll to a track or folder in the list.

3. Press **OK** to select the track for play or a folder to open.

MP3 REPEAT AND SHUFFLE

When an MP3 CD is playing, playback options include **Repeat** and **Shuffle**.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable devices can be connected to the vehicle media hub. Device types include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g. a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).
- Devices with Bluetooth® connectivity. Devices must support A2DP and AVRCP Bluetooth® protocols).

Note: iPod® is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

When connecting a portable storage device, use the **AUX (5)** button. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD play.



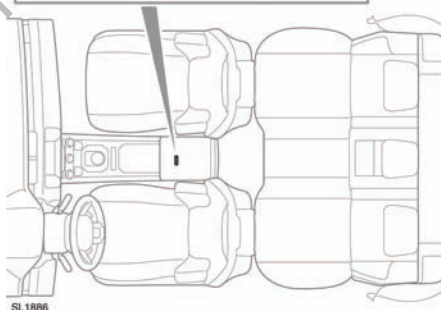
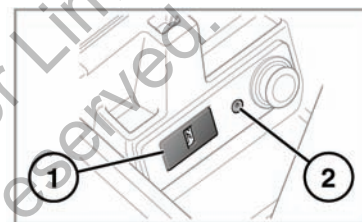
Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

To maximise playback quality, use lossless compression for any media files on iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

For media files delivered via USB or MP3 players, the highest compression rate supported, is 320 kbits per second (kbps). If anything less than 128 kbps is used, Digital Signal Processing (DSP) functionality may be lost.

Note: Some MP3 players may have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

CONNECTING A DEVICE



1. USB/iPod socket.
2. 3.5 mm AUX socket.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Ownership section of the Land Rover website at www.landrover.com, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The Bluetooth® equipped phones listed, have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.*

If the mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), additional features will be available such as battery meter and signal strength. Refer to the mobile phone's display to determine these items.

TELEPHONE SAFETY



Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.



Always stow your mobile phone securely.



The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (6 inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range radio frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover Bluetooth® system supports Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

Note: HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.

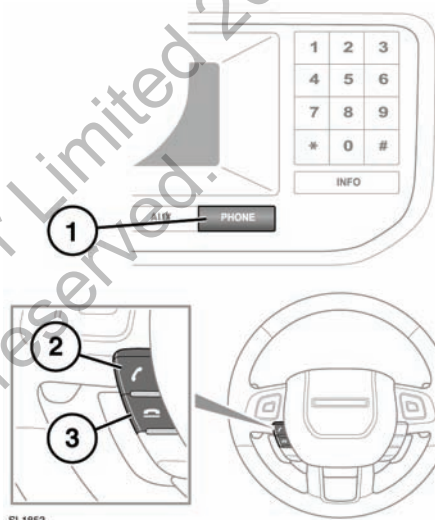
Before making use of the vehicle's Bluetooth phone system, your Bluetooth phone must be paired and connected to the vehicle system. This is done via your mobile phone.

See **PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MOBILE PHONE** (page 178).

Each time the ignition is switched on the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

STANDARD TELEPHONE CONTROLS



1. Press to activate or deactivate telephone mode.
2. Press to answer a call or to dial a number.
3. Press to end a call or to reject an incoming call.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MOBILE PHONE

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle using your mobile phone, will vary depending on the type of mobile phone used.

1. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the audio system is active and that no other phone is currently connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® system.
2. Using the mobile phone, search for Bluetooth® devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.
3. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered (named Range Rover Evoque), select this device from the list.
4. When prompted, enter the Bluetooth® PIN (Personal Identification Number) into the mobile phone. This four digit number is randomly generated by the vehicle system and will be displayed on the screen.
5. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, it can dock automatically. If it does not automatically dock, you will have to connect manually with the Land Rover Bluetooth® system, via the mobile phone. Please consult the mobile phone's instructions for further information.

Note: Some mobile phones require the Bluetooth® pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.

CALL VOLUME

The phone call volume is operated by the audio system's volume control.

If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio source is suppressed for the duration of the call. Parking aid warnings are not suppressed.

ANSWERING/REJECTING/ENDING CALLS

1. Press **PHONE (1)** or the steering wheel control **(2)** to answer an incoming call.
2. To reject or end a call, press the **PHONE (1)** button or the steering wheel control **(3)**.

DIALLING

1. With **PHONE (1)** or the steering wheel control **(2)** selected, use the numeric keypad to enter a telephone number.
2. Press **OK** or the steering wheel control **(3)** to dial the number.

If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio source is suppressed for the duration of the call. Parking aid warnings are not suppressed.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

-  **Avoid exposing the fuel gasses to any potential sources of ignition as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.**
-  **Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures, and electrical sparks.**
-  **Switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players.**

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

-  Do not use leaded fuels, lead substitutes, or fuel additives.
-  Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by Land Rover.

OCTANE RATING

Your Land Rover requires the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to achieve optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, you may use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON, but this may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause audible engine 'knock' (a metallic rapping noise from the engine) and other driveability problems.

-  Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON as severe engine damage may occur.

Note: Occasional, light, engine knock experienced while accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.

If a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even when using fuel to the recommended octane rating, or if you hear engine knock while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer to have the problem corrected. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which Land Rover is not responsible. If in doubt seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer in the territory concerned.

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel (where available) may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

ETHANOL

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (E5 and E10) may be used.

-  This vehicle is not suitable for fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.
-  Do not use E85 fuel as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

ETHANOL

Brazil only

Vehicles intended for sale in Brazil can use E22 fuel.

-  This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 25% ethanol..

METHANOL

-  Wherever possible avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage. Vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels is not the responsibility of Land Rover and may not be covered under the warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an Ether based compound derived from Petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the Octane rating of fuel.

REFORMULATED GASOLINE

Several petroleum companies have announced the availability of reformulated fuels. These fuels are specially formulated to further reduce vehicle emissions. Land Rover fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain ambient air quality, and encourages the use of reformulated gasoline where available.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

- ❗ Do not use RME (bio-diesel) except in the case of those proprietary diesel fuels which contain a mix of up to 7%. Land Rover vehicles can accept no responsibility for damage caused by using RME in concentrations greater than 7%.

Use only high quality diesel fuel according to EN590 or equivalent.

The quality of diesel fuel is variable, depending on geographic location. Always use premium or the highest quality fuel available in your locality. High quality fuel ensures a longer life for your engine components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to engine components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

- ❗ If you inadvertently fill your vehicle with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. Contact your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer immediately.

- ❗ Land Rover can accept no responsibility for any damage caused by running your vehicle with petrol or vegetable oil in the fuel tank.

SULPHUR CONTENT

- ❗ If your vehicle is fitted with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) the maximum Sulphur content must not exceed 0.005%. Using an incorrect fuel will cause serious damage to the DPF.

The Sulphur content of diesel used in Land Rover vehicles should not exceed 0.3% (3000 parts per million).

In some countries diesel will contain higher levels of Sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on engine components. If in doubt contact a local Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

- ❗ Avoid running out of fuel.

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres (0.9 gallons) will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for five minutes after refuelling before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle will need to be driven 1.6-5 km (1-3 miles) in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

Note: If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

FUEL FILLER FLAP



Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap.

The fuel filler flap is located on the right-hand side of the vehicle, at the rear.

1. If a locking fuel filler flap is fitted, ensure that the vehicle alarm system is disarmed.

Note: The fuel filler flap can be opened only when the vehicle alarm is disarmed.

2. Press the flap to unlatch it. Open the flap until the hinge lock fully engages.

After refuelling, tighten the cap until it clicks three times.

3. To close the filler flap, push the flap until latched closed.

Note: The filler flap will only be locked closed when the vehicle is centrally locked.

FUEL FILLER



When refuelling ensure that all windows, doors, and sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.



Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.



Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.



Check the fuel pump information carefully, to ensure that you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.



If the vehicle is filled with incorrect fuel it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly until the filler nozzle automatically cuts-off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.

DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE



When the misfuelling device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Note: It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The diesel misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with the incorrect fuel.

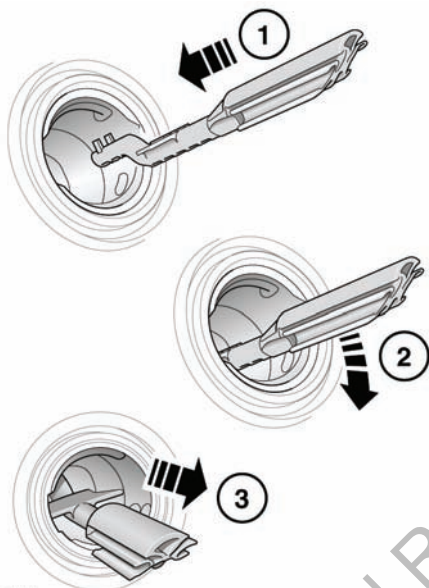
Diesel engine vehicles in some markets are equipped with a misfuelling protection device, incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the misfuel protection device will activate.

Note: The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling device.

When activated, the yellow misfuel protector will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue with the correct fuel, the device will need to be reset.

The reset tool is located in the luggage compartment.



SL1145

Reset the misfuel protection device as follows:

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth by pushing down the top of the reset tool.
3. With the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.



Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

Note: The yellow part of the protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.

Return the reset tool to the luggage compartment.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, you may not be able to add the fuel quantity shown below, as there will be a small reserve remaining in the tank. See **218, CAPACITIES**.

FUEL SPECIFICATION

Petrol	91-98 RON
Diesel	EN 590



Diesel vehicles in Algeria, Egypt, Libya, Morocco, India, Pakistan and Tunisia must only use premium diesel fuel.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures shown below have been calculated using a standard testing procedure (the new EC test procedure from Directive 99/100/EC), and produced in accordance with The Passenger Car Fuel Consumption (Amendment) Order 1996.

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure, depending on driving technique, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, vehicle load and condition.

Variant 4 Wheel Drive	Urban l/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban l/100 km (mpg)	Combined l/100 km (mpg)	CO² emissions combined g/km
Diesel (manual)	6.7 (42.2)	5.2 (54.3)	5.7 (49.6)	149
Diesel (automatic) 3dr	7.8 (36.2)	5.7 (49.6)	6.4 (44.1)	169
Diesel (automatic) 5dr	7.9 (35.8)	5.7 (49.6)	6.5 (43.5)	174
Petrol	11.9 (23.7)	6.9 (40.9)	8.7 (32.5)	199
2 Wheel Drive				
Diesel (manual) 3dr	5.9 (47.9)	4.5 (62.8)	4.9 (57.6)	129
Diesel (manual) 5dr	6.0 (47.1)	4.5 (62.8)	5.0 (56.5)	133

The above figures relate to vehicles compliant with Euro 5 emission standards.

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50km/h (30mph) with an average speed of 19km/h (12mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises steady speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120km/h (75mph) and the average speed 63km/h (39mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7km (4.3 miles).

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.

For additional information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at <http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/>.

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval will be notified to the driver via the Service Interval Indicator in the Driver information centre. If the distance or time are exceeded, the display will show a negative value (-) to indicate that a service is overdue. See **61, SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR**.

SERVICE PORTFOLIO

Vehicle identification information is recorded in the Service Portfolio by the selling dealer. The book also includes important information about customer care, owner issues, routine servicing, parts replacement and vehicle recalls.

Ensure your service provider signs and stamps the book after each service and inspection.

OWNER MAINTENANCE



Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning lamps.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the air conditioning are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.

- Engine coolant level.
- Brake/clutch fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate air conditioning.

Note: The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 50°C.
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40°C.
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.
- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM



No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

AIRBAG SYSTEM



The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system always consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio or in-car entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES



The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle warranty.



Land Rover will not accept any liability for death, personal injury or damage to property which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to Land Rover vehicles.

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

It is essential that any dynamometer testing is carried out only by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by Dealers/Authorised Repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE



If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.



Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area - exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.



Never work or allow any person to place any part of their body beneath a vehicle supported by a jack.



Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped. They may also start to operate after the engine is turned off and continue operating for up to 10 minutes.



Remove metal wrist bands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.



Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch turned on.



Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

FUEL SYSTEM



Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.



Ensure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.



Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Land Rover vehicles are fitted with emission and evaporative control systems. In many countries it is unlawful to tamper, modify or replace such equipment and legal penalties apply if the laws are flouted.

Land Rover Dealers/Authorised Repairers are properly equipped to perform repairs and to maintain these systems.



Exhaust fumes contain poisonous substances which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.

- Do not inhale exhaust gases.
- Do not start or leave the engine running in an enclosed unventilated area.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the taildoor open.
- Do not modify the exhaust system.
- Exhaust leaks should be repaired immediately.
- If exhaust fumes are thought to be entering the vehicle, have it investigated immediately.

***Note:** Running out of fuel can result in a misfire. This can cause damage to the emission control system.*

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle such as engine, throttle, steering or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Land Rover and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle.

CHANGING A BULB



If the lighting has just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool. Handling them when hot may cause personal injury.



Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice. See **221, BULB SPECIFICATION**.



Before attempting a bulb change, ensure that the ignition and affected lamp are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle electrical system.

Not all bulbs are replaceable. The following bulbs can be replaced:

- Headlamps.
- Direction indicators.
- Side lamps.
- Reversing lamp.
- Rear fog lamp.
- Some interior lamps.

All other exterior lamps and some interior lamps are LED (light emitting diode) lamps and can be replaced only by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

All replacement procedures require the removal of components to gain access to the bulbs.



Moving a headlamp unit should be undertaken only by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult your Land Rover Dealer.

Note: To change any bulb in a headlamp unit, a cross head screwdriver and a 10mm spanner is required.

XENON LAMPS



High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapour which are used to power Xenon lamps. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury. Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.



Xenon lamp units operate at a very high temperature. Ensure that the lamp units have cooled before attempting to touch them.



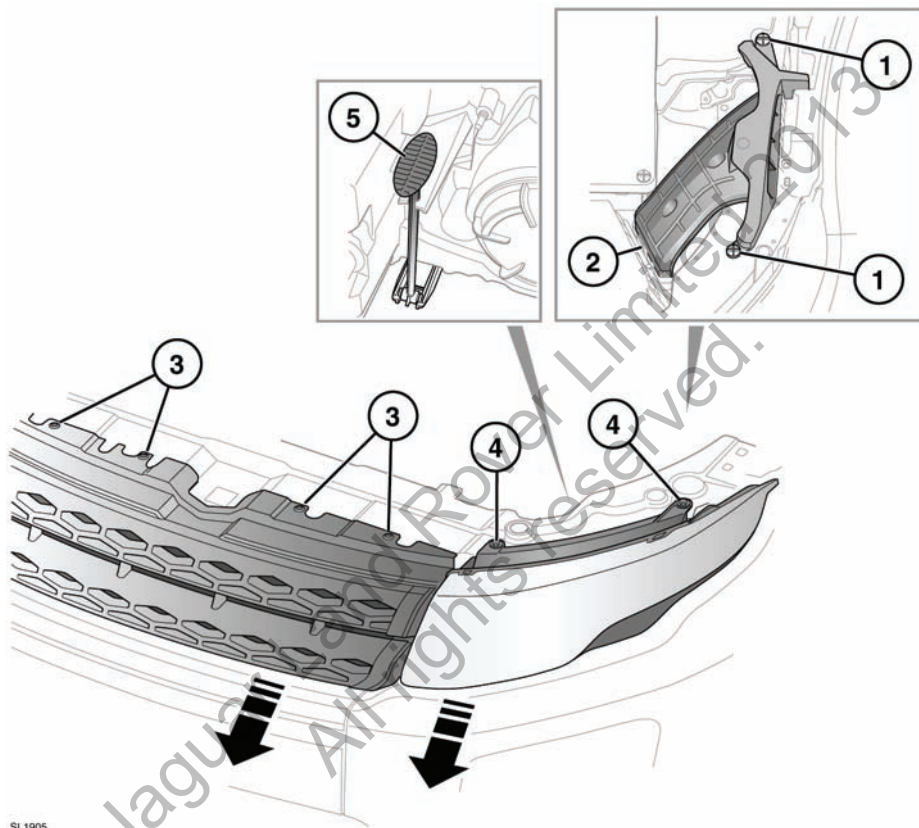
Xenon lamp units contain Mercury which is highly toxic and can be extremely harmful.



Seek advice about the correct disposal of Xenon lamp units from a Land Rover Dealer or your local authority.

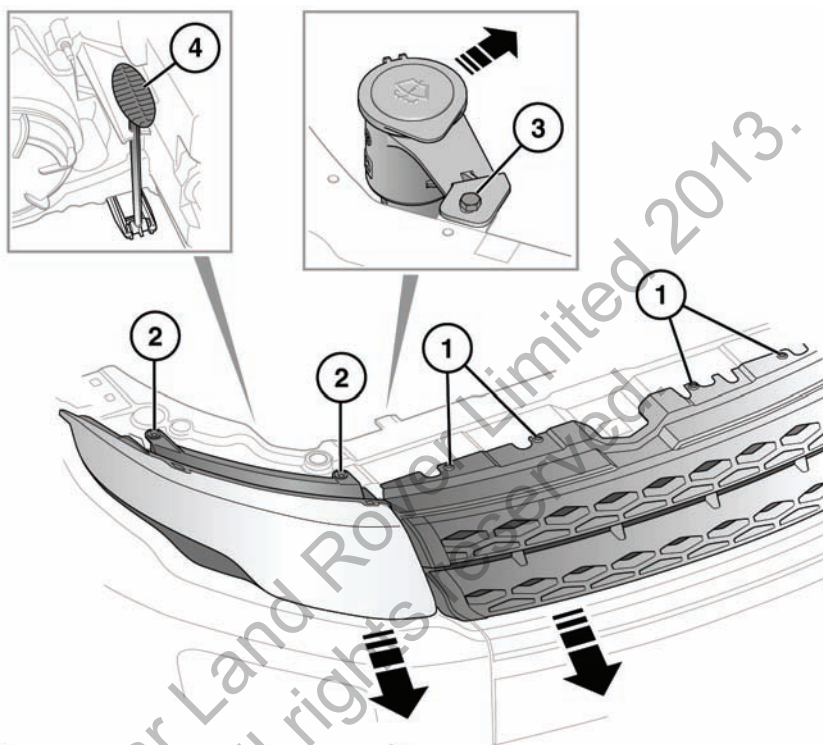
HEADLAMP REMOVAL

Moving the nearside headlamp unit to access bulbs;



1. Remove the two plastic fixings.
2. Pull the tube up to release from the air box. This will allow more room for manoeuvrability.
3. Remove the four grille fixings.
4. Remove the two retaining bolts.
5. At the rear of the headlamp unit, pull up on the T grip release mechanism and hold while sliding the headlamp unit forward 40mm.

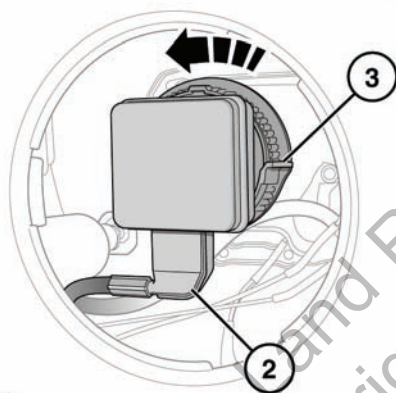
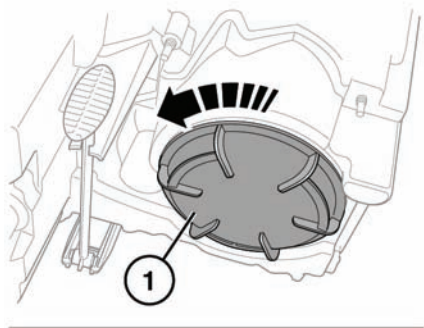
Moving the offside headlamp unit to access bulbs;



SL1916

1. Remove the four grille fixings.
2. Remove the two retaining bolts.
3. Remove the fixing then move the filler tube rearwards. This will allow more room for access to the bulb holders.
4. At the rear of the headlamp unit, pull up on the T grip release mechanism and hold while sliding the headlamp unit forward 40mm.

Removing a headlamp bulb;

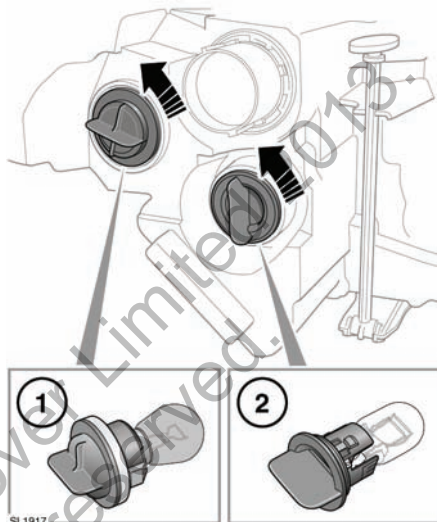


SL1910

1. At the back of the headlamp unit, remove the cover. Turn it counter clockwise to release.
2. The back of the bulb unit will now be exposed. Pull down on the electrical connector to release it from the bulb unit.
3. Turn the retaining collar counter clockwise to release the bulb. Remove the bulb unit from the housing.

DIRECTION INDICATOR AND SIDE LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

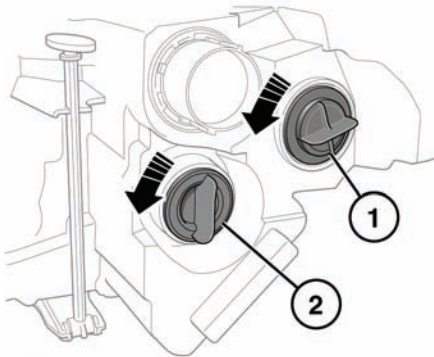
Removing the nearside bulbs;



To gain more room for accessibility, follow steps 1 and 2 for moving the nearside headlamp unit.

1. At the back of the headlamp unit, remove the indicator bulb housing. Turn it counter clockwise to release.
2. To remove the side lamp bulb housing. Turn it counter clockwise to release.

Removing the offside bulbs;

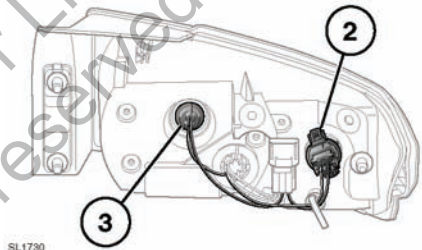
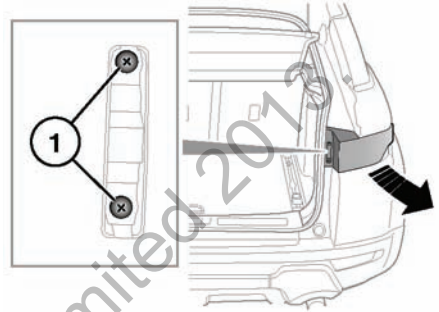


SL1918

To gain more room for accessibility, follow the process for moving the offside headlamp unit.

1. At the back of the headlamp unit, remove the indicator bulb housing. Turn it counter clockwise to release.
2. To remove the side lamp bulb housing. Turn it counter clockwise to release.

REAR DIRECTION INDICATOR AND REVERSING LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



SL1790

1. Remove the two fixings.
2. Direction indicator.
3. Reversing lamp

Turn the relevant bulb holder counter clockwise and pull to remove from the lamp unit. Grip the holder then press the bulb into the holder and turn counter clockwise to release the bulb. Pull the bulb up to remove.

REAR FOG LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

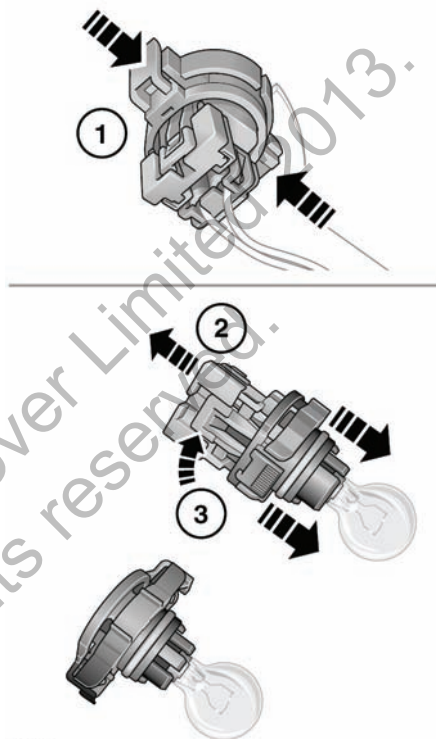
-  Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.
-  Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles, select 1st or reverse gear on manual vehicles.
-  Switch on the hazard warning lamps.
-  Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.
-  Disconnect trailer/caravan from vehicle.
-  Ensure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.
-  If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust system components until they have cooled.

Access to a rear fog lamp housing is from beneath and behind the rear bumper. The bulb holder is a black plastic unit that incorporates the bulb. No tools are required but a torch may be of use.

1. To remove the bulb holder, press in the outer wings on the black plastic unit and pull the holder free of the housing.
2. To separate the bulb holder from the electrical connector, first push up the connector lock.
3. Push in the release mechanism while pulling the connector and bulb holder apart.

Note: Inside the bulb holder are three locating lugs. When fitting the new bulb unit, the lugs must mate up to the connector correctly.

Refitting is a reverse of the removal process. Ensure that the connector lock is pressed down and that the bulb unit locates securely into the fog lamp housing.



SL2097

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows;

Note: The Smart Key must remain in the vehicle while wiper blades are replaced.

1. Ensure that the ignition is turned off.
2. Turn the ignition on then off again.
3. Immediately push the wiper control down to start the single wipe operation and turn on the ignition again.

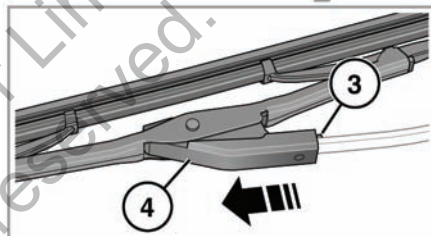
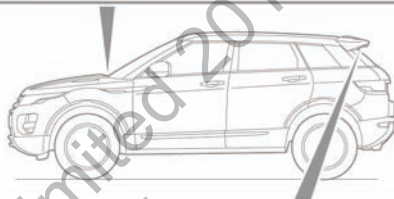
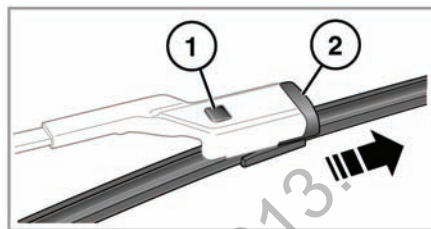
The wipers will move to their service position.

4. When the new parts have been fitted, turn the ignition off. This will return the wipers to park position.

Front wiper blade: Lift the blade clear of the screen.

1. Push down on the button and hold.
2. Pull the wiper blade away from the button.

When the new blade is pushed into the receiver, the button will click into place.



SL1904

Rear wiper blade: Lift the blade clear of the screen.

3. Prise the tab out and hold.
4. Slide the blade down the wiper arm to clear the mounting.

When the new blade is pushed into the wiper arm, the tab will click into place.

THE EXTERIOR

- ❗ Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose before washing the vehicle.
- ❗ Never aim a hose water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals or at any components which may be damaged.
- ❗ Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.
- ❗ Following cleaning of the vehicle exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.
- ❗ Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings and tree resin, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.
- ❗ Use only cleaning products approved for use on vehicles.
- ❗ Camera lenses must be treated with care. Clean with a low pressure hose and wipe with a damp cloth.

Stubborn stains such as tar spots and grease on the paintwork may require the use of white spirit. After use, ensure the area is washed immediately with warm soapy water to remove all traces of the spirit.

Note: Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of the bumper mouldings. It will become ingrained in the textured finish.

SENSORS

- ❗ When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

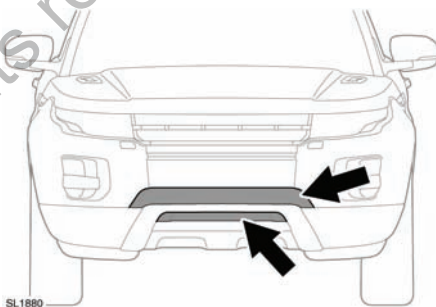
Park assist and Parking aids sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the underbody with plain water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING



- ❗ Ensure that the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

Ensure that the vehicle underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

ALLOY WHEELS

- ⚠ Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protecting coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

THE INTERIOR

- ⚠ **Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly and may cause damage to the vehicle interior. Ensure that you read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.**

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

- ⚠ Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.

Dynamica suede fabric should be cleaned regularly. Do not rub vigorously and do not use a steam machine. Dusting with a soft brush, a dry cloth or vacuum cleaner will be sufficient.

Do not use printed absorbent cloths or paper as they may transfer colour to the fabric.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

- ⚠ Use only cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use solvents. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of products which are not approved will invalidate your warranty.

- ⚠ If you are in any doubt as to which products to use, consult your Land Rover Dealer/Approved Repairer.

Leather should be cleaned and protected using Land Rover leather cleaner BAC500490.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every one to two months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Land Rover leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protection film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects such as belts, zipper fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.
- Do not use a cleaning product that is not specifically for use in a vehicle. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty.

If a valet service is used, ensure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

Note: Some materials/fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.

SEAT BELTS



Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended.

Note: While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by your Dealer/Approved Repairer.

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS



Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.



Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

CARPET AND MATS

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

INSTRUMENT PANEL, TOUCH SCREEN AND AUDIO SYSTEM



Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.



When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, ensure that fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

- Clean with a lightly moistened cloth.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.

- To prevent errors occurring, ensure that only one finger at a time is in contact with the touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

BLOCKED WASHER JETS



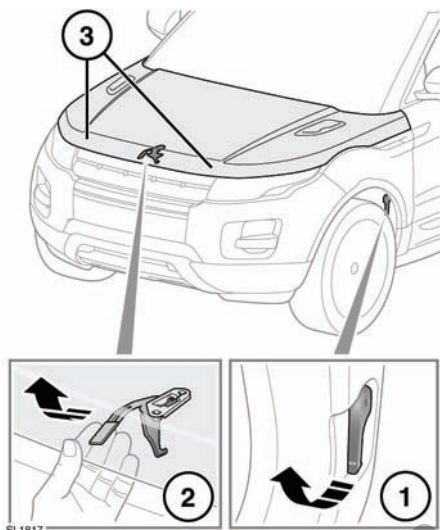
Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windshield washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturers instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Ensure that the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE BONNET



Opening

1. Pull the bonnet release lever, located in the left-hand front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch lever, located below the centre point of the bonnet, then raise the bonnet.

Closing



Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.

3. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click. Check that both catches are engaged by trying to lift the front edge of the bonnet.

POISONOUS FLUIDS

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds.

For your own safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

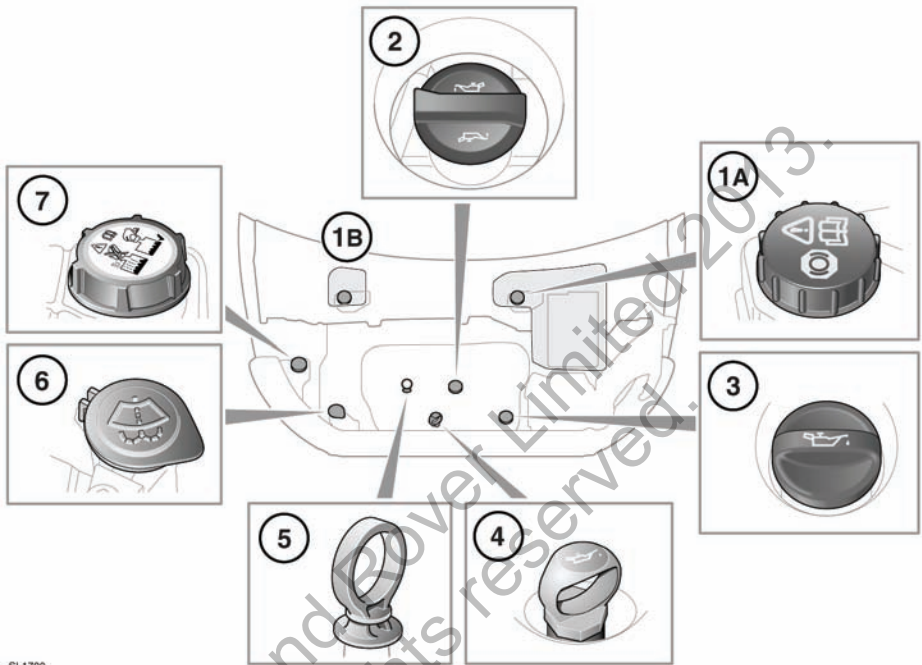
USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.



It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses or soil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW



SL1700

2.0L petrol engine

1. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir caps (beneath covers):
 - A. Left-hand drive vehicles.
 - B. Right-hand drive vehicles.
2. Engine oil filler cap.
5. Oil level dipstick.
6. Washer fluid filler cap.
7. Engine coolant filler cap.



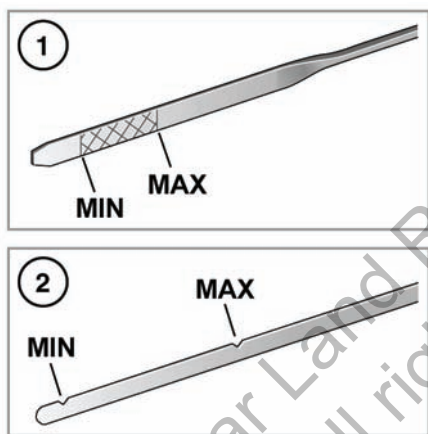
Do not drive if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

2.2L Diesel engine

1. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir cap (beneath covers):
 - A. Left-hand drive vehicles.
 - B. Right-hand drive vehicles.
3. Engine oil filler cap.
4. Oil level dipstick.
6. Washer fluid filler cap.
7. Engine coolant filler cap.

ENGINE OIL LEVEL CHECK

- ❗ Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.
- ❗ Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.
- ❗ If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.



1. 2.0L petrol engine.
2. 2.2L diesel engine dipstick

ENGINE OIL CHECK PREPARATION

Prior to checking the oil level ensure that:

- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

Note: If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

As a general guide, if the oil level on the dipstick:

- Is nearer to the upper mark or notch than the lower, do not add oil.
- Is nearer to the lower mark or notch than the upper, add 0.5 litre (1 pint) of oil.
- Is below the lower mark or notch, add for the diesel engine, 1.5 litre (2.6 pints) of oil and for the petrol engine, 0.8 litre (1.4 pints) of oil. Re-check the level after a further 5 minutes.

ENGINE OIL TOPPING UP

- ❗ Your vehicle warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.
- ❗ Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.
- ❗ Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level re-checked to ensure that the engine is not overfilled.

1. Remove the oil filler cap.

2. Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick.
3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping-up.
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.

It is essential to use the correct specification oil and to ensure it is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

Note: The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** on the petrol engine dipstick is 0.85 litres (1.5 pints) and on the diesel engine dipstick is 1.5 litres (2.6 pints).

ENGINE OIL SPECIFICATION

It is important that the correct oil specification is used. Vehicles fitted with a diesel particulate filter (DPF) must use the specified oils otherwise significant engine damage will occur. Specified oils ensure that the life of the DPF is maximised.

When a new vehicle is sold into markets where the diesel fuel has a high level of sulphur content, a DPF is not fitted and alternative oils are specified. See **180, SULPHUR CONTENT**. Use of incorrect oils will result in serious engine damage.

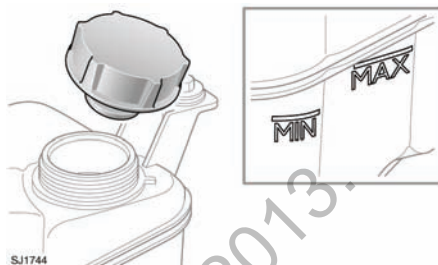
Land Rover recommends Castrol oils. See **217, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

COOLANT LEVEL CHECK



Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.

The coolant level in the expansion tank should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.



Ensure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.

COOLANT TOPPING UP



Never remove the filler cap when the engine is hot - escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.



Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine) - a fire may result.



Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.



When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always ensure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

Top-up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the expansion tank. Use only a 50% mix of water and Texaco XLC antifreeze.

Note: In an emergency - and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable - top-up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top-up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt consult a qualified technician.

Ensure the cap is tightened fully after top-up is completed by turning the cap until the ratchet cap clicks.

COOLANT ANTIFREEZE



Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.



If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.



The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine cooling system and therefore engine durability.



Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at $50\% \pm 5\%$ all year round (not just in cold conditions). To ensure that the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are retained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year and completely renewed every ten years, regardless of distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components.

The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C (68°F) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C (-40°F).

BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL CHECK



Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.



Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.



If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.



Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine).



Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

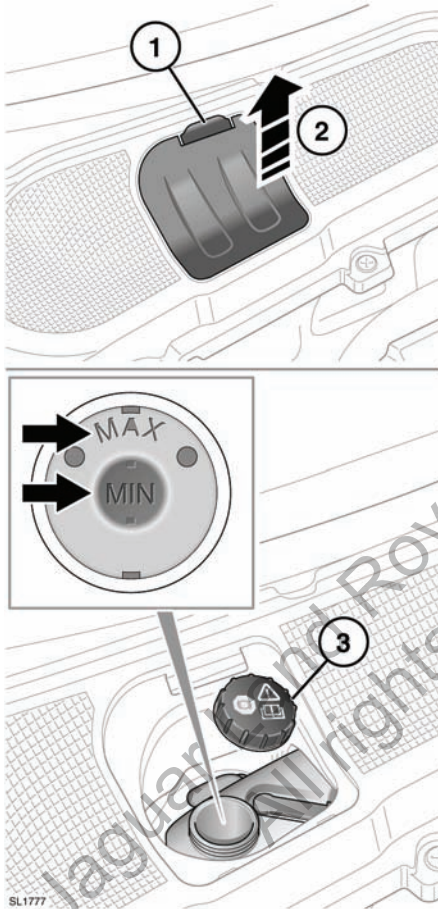


If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the instrument panel will illuminate.

Note: If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits by gently applying the brakes. Check and top-up the fluid level if necessary.

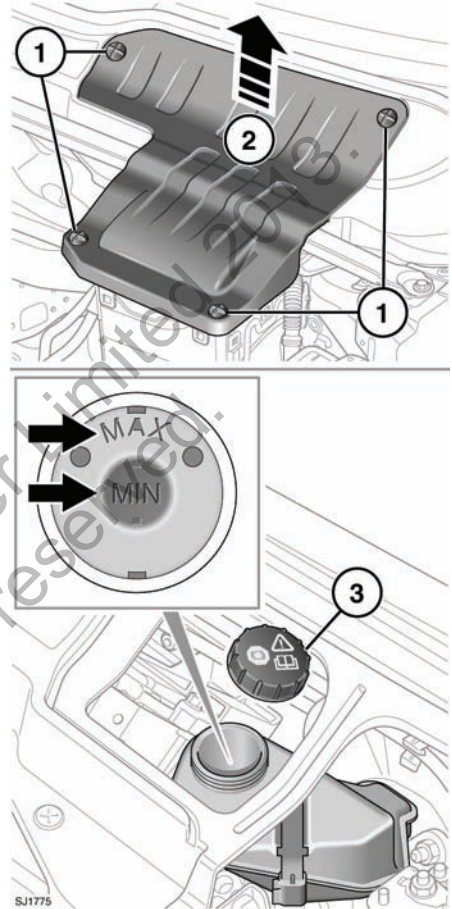
With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).

Right hand drive:



1. Release the catch and pull forwards.
2. Pull up to release and lift the cover clear.
3. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir. Remove the cap.
The brake fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Left hand drive:



1. Remove the battery cover. Turn the four fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise to release.
2. Lift the cover clear.
3. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir. Remove the cap.

The brake fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Note: The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID TOPPING UP

⚠ Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

⚠ Only use new fluid from an airtight container (fluid from open containers or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must not be used).

⚠ **Top up the brake fluid with Shell DOT4 ESL brake fluid.** If unavailable, use a low viscosity, synthetic compatible DOT4 brake fluid that meets ISO 4925 class 6 and Land Rover LRES22BF03 specification. Only fluid of this type and standard may be used.

⚠ Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

1. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
2. Replace the reservoir cap.
3. Refit the reservoir cover.

WASHER FLUID LEVEL CHECK

⚠ Do not allow screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.



If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection.



Only use approved washer fluid.



Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

WASHER FLUID TOPPING UP

The washer reservoir supplies the front and rear screen washer jets and headlamp washer jets.

Check and top-up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top-up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace filler cap.

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow any naked flames, or other sources of ignition near the battery as the battery may emit explosive gasses.



Ensure that when working near, or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn. This will reduce the risk of eye damage caused by acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gasses.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive, and toxic.

BATTERY CARE



If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothes you should remove the affected clothing and flush the skin/eyes with copious amounts of water. Seek medical assistance immediately.



If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal, seek medical assistance immediately.



Do not connect any 12 volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.



The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Ensure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.



Do not expose the battery to a naked flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.



Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.



Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery, and never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals.



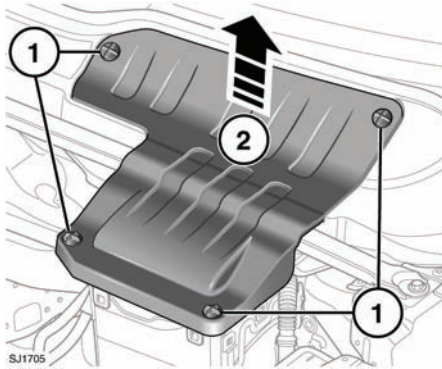
Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

Your vehicle will be fitted with either an 80 amp hr low maintenance battery or an 80 amp hr Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) battery. AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.



Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

In hot climates more frequent checks of the low maintenance battery electrolyte level and condition are required. If necessary, the battery cells can be topped up using distilled water.



1. Turn the four fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise to release.
 2. Remove the battery cover.
- Unscrew the six battery cell plugs and store carefully.

Check that the surface of the liquid (electrolyte) is level with the plastic level indicator. If necessary, top up with distilled water, but never overfill. Refit the six cell plugs.

The battery cover must be refitted as soon as possible to ensure that the battery positive terminal is insulated.

STARTING A DISABLED VEHICLE USING BOOSTER CABLES



Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.



Before attempting to start the disabled vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park is selected or the manual gearbox is in neutral.



Always wear appropriate eye protection when working with batteries.



Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.



During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury - keep sparks and naked lights away from the engine compartment.



Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles other than the booster cables.

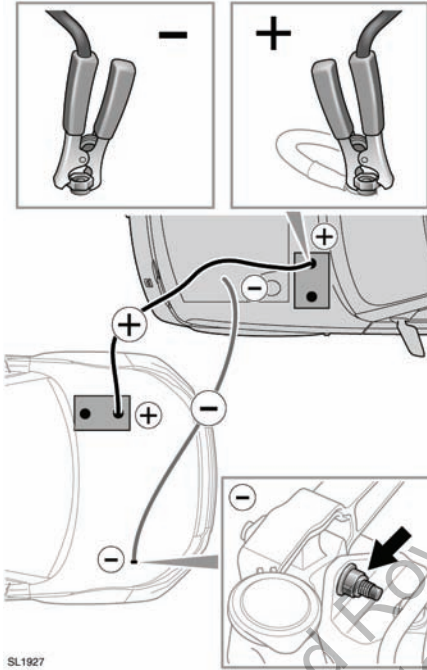


Make sure that the slave battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.



Disconnect the booster cables prior to operating any electrical equipment.

Note: Before connecting booster cables ensure that the battery connections on the disabled vehicle are correct and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.



1. Connect the positive (Red) booster cable to the positive (+) terminal on the donor vehicle's battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive booster cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
3. Connect the negative (Black) booster cable to the recommended jump starting earth point of the donor vehicle.
4. Connect the other end of the negative booster cable to the earth point indicated.

Note: Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.

6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Note: Do not switch on any electrical circuits of the disabled vehicle until after the booster cables are removed.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for two minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (Black) booster cable from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (Black) booster cable from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (Red) booster cable from the previously discharged battery.
12. Disconnect the positive (Red) booster cable from the donor vehicle.

STARTING A DISABLED VEHICLE USING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given.

1. Connect the positive (Red) booster cable to the positive (+) battery terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the negative (Black) booster cable to the vehicle earth point.
3. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
4. Disconnect the negative (Black) booster cable from the battery terminal of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the positive (Red) booster cable from the battery terminal of the vehicle.

REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Special tools are required to refit the battery after removal, therefore battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CHARGING OR REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

If the vehicle battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Battery disconnection, removal and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



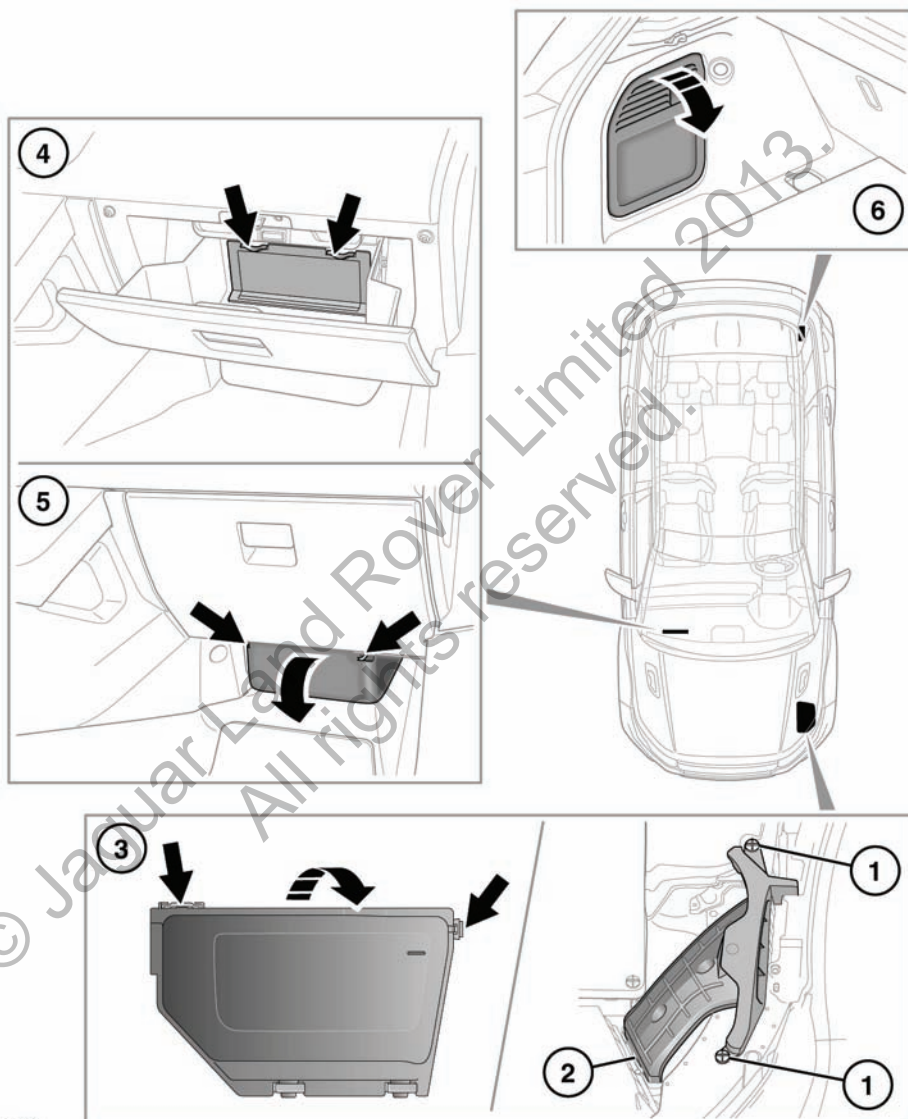
Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised

Repairer and/or your local authority.

EFFECTS OF BATTERY DISCONNECTION

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power prior to disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger depending on its state when the battery was disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the Smart Key in the normal way to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS





When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture, and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

Engine compartment - fuse box access:

1. Remove the two plastic fixings.
2. Pull the tube up to release from the air box.
3. Delatch the tabs. The fuse box can now be opened.

The engine compartment fuse numbers and positions are shown on the inside of the fuse box cover.

Passenger compartment - fuse box access. There are two covers.

4. To access the upper part, open the glovebox and remove the panel from the glovebox liner. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
5. To access the lower part, remove the lower access panel.

Luggage compartment - fuse box access:

6. Remove the panel from the left side trim of the luggage compartment. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.

CHANGING A FUSE



Always turn off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.



Fit Land Rover approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse, may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.



If the replacement fuse blows after installation, the system should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Land Rover recommend that relays should only be replaced by qualified persons.

The fuse removal tweezers are located in the passenger compartment fusebox. Press the tweezers onto the head of a fuse and pull to remove. A break in the wire inside the fuse indicates that the fuse has blown and must be replaced.

There are some spare replacement fuses in the passenger compartment fusebox. See the fuse box label for details.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	Diode	-	Engine management supply
2	5	tan	Voltage module supply
3	80	-	Cooling fans
4	60	-	Diesel - Glow plugs
5	80	-	Electric power assisted steering
6	15	blue	Oxygen sensors
7	5	tan	Engine management, A/C clutch
8	20	yellow	Diesel and Petrol - Engine management ECU
9	10	red	Diesel - Engine sensors
10	20	yellow	Automatic transmission
11	10	red	Diesel and Petrol - Engine sensors
12	15	blue	Diesel - EGR bypass Petrol - Ignition coils
13	10	red	A/C clutch
14	15	blue	Diesel - Engine sensors
15	40	green	Starter motor
16	100	-	PTC heater
17	60	-	Passenger compartment fuse box
18	60	-	Passenger compartment fuse box
19	60	-	Luggage compartment fuse box
20	60	-	Luggage compartment fuse box
21	60	-	Voltage module supply
22	30	pink	Front wipers
23	40	green	Passenger compartment fuse box
24	-	-	Not used
25	30	pink	Anti lock braking system
26	40	green	Anti lock braking system
27	40	green	Passenger compartment fuse box
28	40	green	Heater blower
29	30	pink	Electric trailer brake -Australia
30	15	blue	Headlamp washer

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
31	15	blue	Horns
32	20	yellow	Auxiliary heater
33	5	tan	Relay coils - Horn, Heated front screen, Fuel pump
34	40	green	LH Heated front screen
35	40	green	RH Heated front screen
36	5	tan	Auxiliary water pump
37	20	yellow	Fuel pump
38	-	-	Not used
39	-	-	Not used
40	5	tan	AFS (RH) headlamp
41	5	tan	AFS (LH) headlamp
42	5	tan	Headlamp control, Dynamic headlamp levelling control unit
43	5	tan	High beam assist, rear view camera,
44	10	red	Heated steering wheel
45	5	tan	Diesel - Auxiliary water pump, water in fuel sensor

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	5	tan	Smart key receiver, Alarm sensor, TPM system
2	-	-	Not used
3	10	red	Front fog lamps
4	-	-	Not used
5	5	tan	Antilock braking system
6	5	tan	Engine/luggage compartment fusebox
7	-	-	Not used
8	25	clear	Passenger door module
9	5	tan	Electric parking brake
10	5	tan	Heated washer jets
11	10	red	Reverse light trailer
12	5	tan	Reverse lights
13	-	-	Not used
14	5	tan	Brake pedal switch
15	30	green	Heated rear screen
16	5	tan	Electric power assisted steering
17	5	tan	Keyless entry control module
18	-	-	Not used
19	5	tan	Engine management control module
20	5	tan	Accelerator pedal
21	5	tan	PTC heater control unit, Centre console switch, Outboard fascia switch
22	5	tan	Automatic transmission
23	-	-	Not used
24	5	tan	RH rear fog lamp
25	5	tan	LH rear fog lamp
26	-	-	Not used
27	10	red	Trailer position lamps
28	-	-	Not used
29	-	-	Not used
30	-	-	Not used

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
31	5	tan	Rain sensor, Auxiliary lamp switch, Voltage module, Humidity sensor, Passenger airbag disabling lamp
32	25	clear	Drivers door module
33	-	-	Not used
34	10	red	Fuel flap locking/Fuel flap unlocking
35	-	-	Not used
36	5	tan	Battery backed sounder
37	20	yellow	Keyless entry control module
38	15	blue	Front screen washer
39	25	clear	LH rear door module
40	5	tan	Driver door window switch, Clock, Pass front seat logic lumbar
41	-	-	Not used
42	30	green	Driver front seat
43	15	blue	Rear screen washer
44	25	clear	RH rear door module
45	30	green	Passenger front seat
46	-	-	Not used
47	20	yellow	Sunblind control unit
48	15	blue	Trailer connector Vbatt
49	-	-	Not used
50	-	-	Not used
51	5	tan	Steering wheel switches
52	20	yellow	Front cigar lighter
53	20	yellow	Accessory socket - cubby box
54	-	-	Not used
55	20	yellow	Accessory socket - rear console
56	10	red	SRS system
57	10	red	Interior lamps
58	-	-	Not used
59	-	-	Not used
60	-	-	Not used

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
61	5	tan	Start control unit
62	10	red	Climate control system
63	20	yellow	Accessory socket - load space
64	-	-	Not used
65	-	-	Not used
66	5	tan	Diagnostics
67	15	blue	Trailer
68	-	-	Not used
69	15	blue	Automatic transmission

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FA1	10	red	Touch screen
FA2	15	blue	Radio module
FA3	10	red	Digital radio/TV module
FA4	15	blue	Rear seat entertainment
FA5	5	tan	Seat switches
FA6	30	green	Electric park brake
FA7	15	blue	Rear wiper
FA8	30	green	Electric parking brake
FA9	-	-	Not used
FA10	5	tan	Amplifier
FA11	40	green	Amplifier
FA12	-	-	Not used
FB1	5	tan	Adaptive dynamics
FB2	15	blue	E differential module
FB3	15	blue	Driver seat heater
FB4	15	blue	Passenger seat heater
FB5	30	green	Adaptive dynamics
FB6	25	clear	Power tailgate
FB7	5	tan	Fuel burning heater RF receiver
FB8	10	red	Instrument cluster
FB9	5	tan	Proximity camera
FB10	5	tan	Blindspot monitoring
FB11	-	-	Not used
FB12	-	-	Not used

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Description	Diesel	Petrol
Number of cylinders	4	4
Displacement	2179cc	1999cc
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
Compression ratio	15.8:1	10:1

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Description	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	Diesel with Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	5W/30 meeting Ford 934-B specification or Castrol SLX Professional Powerflow C1
	Diesel without Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)	5W/30 meeting Ford 913-B or 913-C specification or Castrol SLX Professional A5
	Petrol	5W/30 meeting Ford 913-B specification
Gearbox oil	Manual	Castrol BOT350 M3
	Automatic	Nippon AW-1 ATF
Power transfer unit	4WD vehicles	Castrol BOT118+
Haldex coupling	4WD vehicles	STAT OIL SL01-301
Rear differential oil	4WD vehicles	Castrol EPX
Brake/Clutch fluid	All vehicles	Shell DOT4 ESL. If unavailable, a low viscosity, synthetic compatible DOT4 brake fluid that meets ISO 4925 class 6 and Land Rover LRES22BF03 requirements may be used.
Screen wash	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection
Coolant	All vehicles	50% mixture of Texaco XLC antifreeze and water.

Land Rover recommends Castrol oils.



CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity litres (pints)
Fuel tank	Diesel	60 (105.6)
	Petrol	70 (123.2)
Engine oil refill and filter change	Diesel	5.9 (10.4)
	Petrol	5.6 (9.9)
Gearbox	Manual	2.0 (3.5)
	Automatic	7.0 (12.3)
Power transfer unit	4WD vehicles	0.75 (1.3)
Haldex coupling	4WD vehicles	0.65 (1.1)
Rear differential	4WD vehicles	0.7 (1.2)
Washer reservoir	With headlamp powerwash	4.2 (7.4)
	Without headlamp powerwash	3.1 (5.5)
Cooling system (refill)	Diesel:	
	Manual, with auxiliary heater	5.6 (9.9)
	Manual, without auxiliary heater	5.4 (9.5)
	Automatic, with auxiliary heater	5.9 (10.4)
	Automatic, without auxiliary heater	5.7 (10.0)
	Petrol:	
	With auxiliary heater	4.6 (8.1)
	Without auxiliary heater	4.4 (7.7)

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks, level plugs or driver information module, as applicable.

WEIGHTS

	Vehicle weight from kg (lb)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) ¹ kg (lb)	Gross Train Weight (GTW) ² kg (lb)
4WD	1640 (3615)	2350 (5180)	4150 (9150)
2WD	1595 (3515)	2350 (5180)	3850 (8485)
¹ The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load. ² The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer including their respective loads.			

Note: For every 1000m increase above sea level, GTW must be reduced by 10%.

Maximum front axle load ¹ kg (lb)	Maximum rear axle load ¹ kg (lb)	Maximum roof rack load ² kg (lb)	Maximum payload ³ kg (lb)
1300(2865)	1145 (2525)	75 (165)	500 (1100)
¹ The front and rear axle maximum loads can not be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.			
² This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.			
³ Options fitted to vehicle will affect maximum payload.			

WHEEL ALIGNMENT DATA (CHINA)

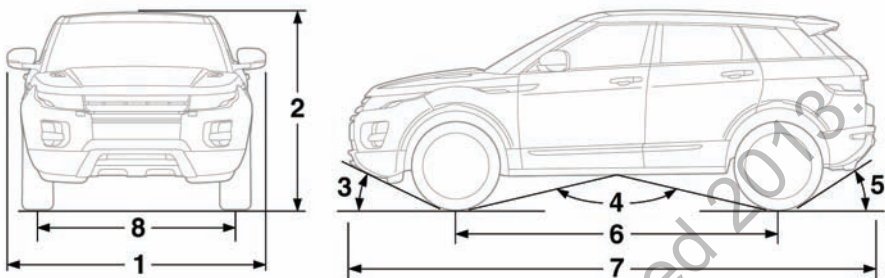
Wheel alignment - front toe	+ 0.22°
Wheel alignment - rear toe	+0.18°
Camber - front	-0.51°
Camber - rear	-1.25°

PEDAL TRAVEL (CHINA)

Both the brake and clutch pedal travel are set at the factory and are non-adjustable.

DIMENSIONS

Coupe and 5 Door



Item	Description	mm (inches)	Degrees
1	Width (mirrors extended)	2125 (83.7)	-
	Width (mirrors folded)	1965 (77.4)	-
2	Height - Coupe / 5 Door	1605/1635 (63.2/64.4)	
2	Height with roof rails - Coupe / 5 Door	1610/1640 (63.4/64.6)	-
2	Height with roof rails and cross bars - Coupe / 5 Door	1690/1720 (66.5/67.7)	
3	Approach angle - Pure/Dynamic	-	25°/19°
4	Breakover angle	-	22°
5	Departure angle - Pure/Dynamic	-	33°/30°
	Departure angle with detachable tow ball	-	22°
6	Wheelbase	2660 (104.8)	-
7	Length (excluding licence plate plinth) - Pure/Dynamic	4355/4365 (171.5/171.9)	-
8	Track - front	1625 (63.9)	-
	Track - rear	1630 (64.2)	-
-	Maximum wading depth	500 (19.7)	-
-	Minimum ground clearance	212 (8.3)	-
-	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	11300 (445)	-

BULB SPECIFICATION



Before attempting to replace a bulb, ensure that both the affected lamp and the vehicle's ignition, are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

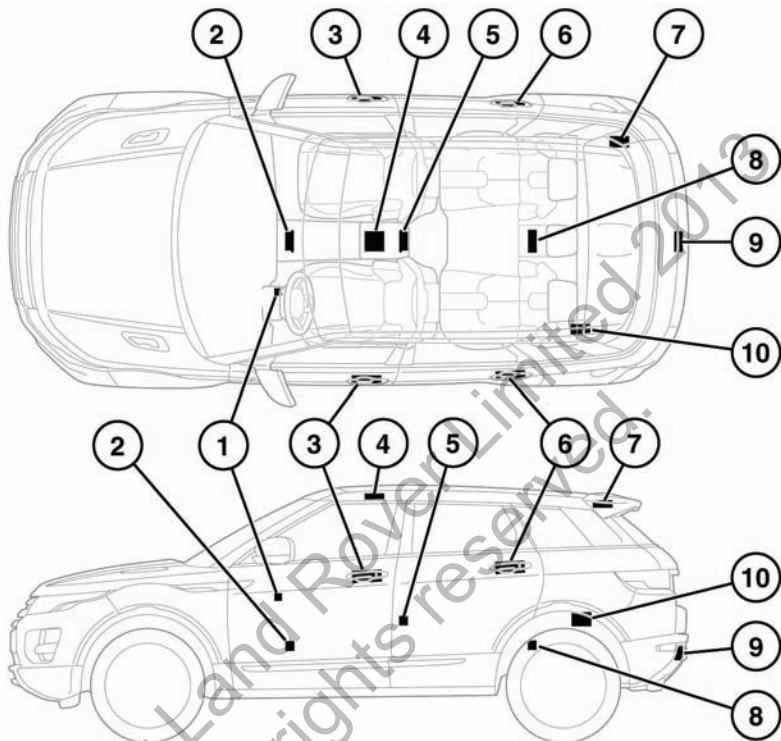
Note: LED bulbs can be replaced only by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watts)
Halogen headlamp (low and high beam)	HB3	60
Xenon headlamp (low and high beam)	D3S	35
Front direction indicators	PS24WSV	24
Front side repeater lamps	W5W	5
Rear direction indicators	PS24WSV	24
Reverse lamps	PS16W	16
Rear fog lamps		19

WHEEL AND TYRE SIZES

Wheel size	Tyre size	Speed rating
7.0J x 17	225/65 R17	V
8.0J x 18	235/60 R18	V
8.0J x 19	235/55 R19	V
8.0J x 20	245/45 R20	V
4.0J x 18	155/85 R18	M
	Temporary use spare wheel and tyre	

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



SL1765

1. Steering column backup transmitter.
2. Front cockpit transmitters.
3. Front exterior door handle transmitters.
4. Roof keyless receiver.
5. Floor console front transmitter.
6. Rear exterior door handle transmitters.
7. Loadspace transmitter.
8. Floor console rear transmitter.
9. Tailgate passive entry receiver.
10. Keyless start module.



Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should ensure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7in) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMsystem)



The TPM system provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge when cold.

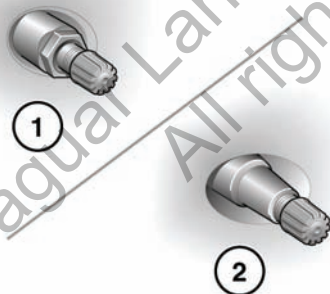


The TPM system can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road.



When inflating tyres, take care not to bend or damage the TPM system valves. Always ensure correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve system.

Note: Different types of tyre may affect the performance of the TPM system. Always replace tyres in accordance with recommendations.

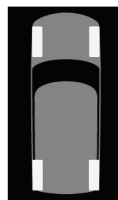


1. TPM system external metal lock nut and valve.
2. Non TPM system rubber valve.

The TPM system constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel. Temporary use spare tyres (when fitted) are not monitored.



The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres is significantly under-inflated or a non TPM system wheel and tyre is in use.



This will be accompanied by a graphic and message in the Driver information centre. The graphic and message will indicate which of the TPM system tyres needs attention.

You should stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See **230, CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURES**.

TPM SYSTEM MESSAGES

When a problem is detected, the warning lamp will illuminate or flash. A text message will be displayed. Until the fault is rectified, the warnings will be repeated each time the ignition is switched on.

Driving through variable climatic conditions can affect tyre pressures. This in turn may promote intermittent TPM system warnings.

If all four road wheels and tyres are replaced with non TPM system wheels, e.g., a set of winter wheels and tyres, the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING UNAVAILABLE** will be displayed. When the original wheels are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance before the TPM system recognises the wheel sensors. At that point, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING AVAILABLE** will be displayed.

The system will automatically recognise any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during a wheel change to allow the system to detect the change. See **235, TOOL KIT**. After driving above 25km/h (18mph), any deflation warning should clear within a few minutes.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

If a non TMP system temporary spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately ten minutes of driving above 25km/h (18mph), the message **FRONT (REAR) RIGHT(LEFT) TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPM system display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle, until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full size TPM system road wheel.

Note: *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPM system fault investigated.*

If any message fails to clear after rectifying the fault, consult your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

TYRE CHANGING



Valve stem seal, washer, nut, valve core and cap should be replaced at every tyre change. Valve stem seal, washer and nut must be replaced if valve retention nut is loosened. Sensor units and nuts must be refitted using correct torque figures and associated profile. Damage to the vehicle may result if these precautions are not taken.

Any tyre changes must be carried out by a qualified technician. Great care must be taken during removal and refitting of tyres to avoid damaging the sensor.

REPLACEMENT TPMS SENSOR

Should the sensor require replacing, it should be carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

A replacement sensor must be fitted to a running wheel in order to be recognised by the system. The vehicle needs to be stationary for 15 minutes during the sensor fitment before the system is ready to detect the new sensor. The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of fifteen minutes after the sensor change, and then remain stationary for fifteen minutes to activate full TPM system operation.

If the TPM system warning for any wheel does not clear, even after ensuring correct inflation and driving for more than ten minutes above 25 km/h (18 mph), you should seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

TYRE REPAIR KIT



If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact your Dealer/Approved Repairer before attempting the repair.

Your vehicle may not be equipped with a spare tyre. If this is the case, your vehicle will be fitted with a Land Rover tyre repair kit which can be used to repair one tyre. It is essential that you read the following guide before attempting to repair a tyre.

The tyre repair kit seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm (1/4 inch).

The tyre repair kit is located in the rear underfloor storage compartment.

Note: The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life, and the expiry date is shown on the top of the bottle. Ensure that the bottle is replaced before the expiry date.

TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION



Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.



Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under inflated.



Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area.



Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.



Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.



The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).



When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.



Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.



Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.



Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended when in use.



Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.



Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit when in use.



Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.

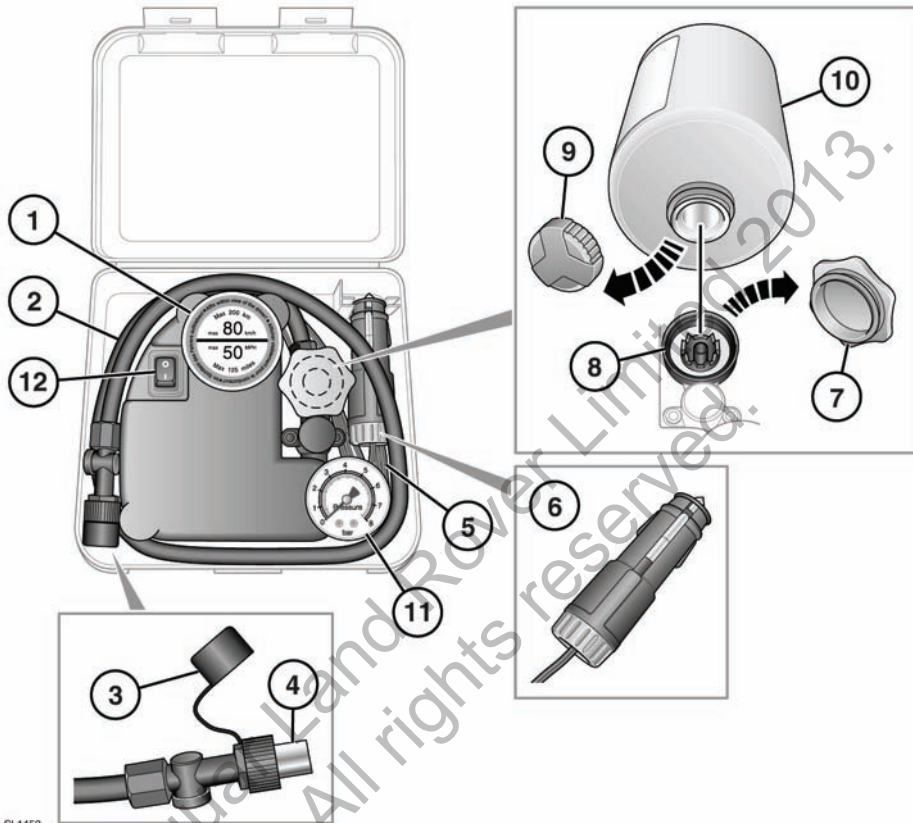


Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent do not inflate the tyre.



Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent switch off the compressor, and deflate the tyre.

TYRE REPAIR KIT OVERVIEW



SL1452

1. Maximum speed label. 80 km/h (50 mph).
2. Tyre inflation hose.
3. Inflation hose protective cap.
4. Inflation hose connector.
5. Compressor power cable.
6. Power cable connector.
7. Sealant bottle receiver cap (orange).
8. Sealant bottle receiver.
9. Sealant bottle cap.
10. Sealant bottle.
11. Tyre pressure gauge.
12. Compressor on/off switch (**I** = on, **O** = off).

USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT



Avoid skin contact with the sealant which contains natural rubber latex. Do not unscrew the sealant bottle from the receiver until it is empty, as sealant will leak out.



If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 lb/in²) within seven minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible, and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.



Before attempting a tyre repair, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.



Ensure that the parking brake is applied, and P is selected if an automatic transmission is fitted.



Do not attempt to remove foreign objects such as nails, screws, etc. from the tyre.



Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed, or poorly ventilated space.



To prevent overheating do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than ten minutes.

Note: All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.

REPAIR PROCEDURE



Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre sidewall: If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the fascia in the driver's field of view. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lights.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver, and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver (clockwise) until tight.
 - Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal.
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose, and connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve. Ensure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Ensure that the compressor switch is in the off (O) position.
8. Insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket. See **73, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.
9. Unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area, start the engine.

10. Set the compressor switch to the on (I) position.
11. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 lbf/in²) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 lbf/in²).
 - When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 lbf/in²). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.
12. During the inflation, switch the compressor off briefly to check the tyre pressure using the gauge mounted on the compressor.
 - It should not take longer than seven minutes to inflate the tyre. If after seven minutes the tyre has not reached the minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.
13. Once the tyre has been inflated, switch off the compressor. If desired, the engine may be turned off after the compressor has been turned off.
14. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.
15. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve by unscrewing it as quickly as possible (anticlockwise).
16. Replace the inflation hose protective cap, and the tyre valve cap.
17. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the receiver.
18. Ensure that the tyre repair kit (including the bottle, and receiver caps) are placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after 3 km (2 miles) so ensure they are easily accessible.

19. Immediately drive the vehicle for 3 km (2 miles) to allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR



When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution and reduced speed to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre, and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 lbf/in²), do not continue driving.



Consult a tyre repair centre, or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for 3 km (2 miles) then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.
4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 lbf/in²) adjust the pressure to the correct value.
6. Ensure that the compressor switch is in the off position (O), and insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket.
7. If the vehicle is in a well ventilated area, start the engine.
8. Switch on the compressor (I), and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure.

9. To check the tyre pressure turn off the compressor then read the pressure from the gauge.
10. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure relief valve.
11. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.
12. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, replace the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector protective cap.
13. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the receiver.
14. Ensure that the tyre repair kit (including the bottle, and receiver caps) are placed securely in the vehicle.
15. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre, or Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Ensure that you make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used before the tyre is removed.
16. Both the tyre inflation hose, and the sealant bottle should be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted.



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste.

Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist, or your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

TYRE CARE



Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.



Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids as they may cause damage to the tyre.



Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.



If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow for example), do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer.

Note: Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard, road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.

All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

TYRES DECLARATION (INDIA ONLY)

All imported tyres must meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989.

All tyres fitted to Land Rover models are supplied as Original Equipment (OE) and are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURES



Tyre pressures should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g. a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 14 kPa / 1.4bar / 2 psi per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 30 - 40 kPa / 0.3 - 0.4 bar / 4 - 6 psi. Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyres pressures.

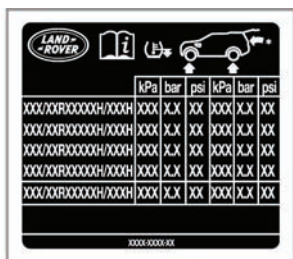
1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.

6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

TYRE PRESSURE LABEL



SL1815

The recommended tyre pressures are listed on a label located in the driver's door opening.

These pressures provide optimum ride and handling characteristics for all normal operating conditions.

Note: The label must not be changed, even if different wheels are fitted at a later stage.

TYRE PRESSURES



Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect.



Pressure checks should only be carried out when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than three hours. A hot tyre at, or below, recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.



If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before re-checking the pressures.

245/45 R20 tires

If your vehicle is fitted with 245/45 R20 tyres then the vehicle will be delivered with pressures as stated on the tyre pressures label in order to optimise low speed ride comfort. For vehicle speeds in excess of 160km/h (100mph), pressures must be increased as indicated in the following table.

High speed pressure compensation

245/45/R20 Tyres	Front tyre pressure kPa / bar / psi	Rear tyre pressure kPa / bar / psi
Speeds up to 160 km/h (100mph)	250 / 2.5 / 36	220 / 2.2 / 32
Speeds over 160km/h (100mph)	270 / 2.7 / 39	240 / 2.4 / 35

If your vehicle is fitted with TPMS then the following also applies;

If tyre pressures are not increased as indicated in the table and vehicle speeds exceed 160km/h (100mph), the warning message 'Tyre pressures low for high speed' may be displayed in the driver information centre. If this message is displayed, reduce speed to below 160km/h (100mph). If required, adjust tyre pressures as indicated at the earliest opportunity.

In this situation, the vehicle must be left in the local ambient local temperature for at least one hour before tyre pressure is adjusted.

Inflation pressure compensation	
Ambient temperature °C (°F)	Pressure compensation kPa / bar / psi
20 (68)	as vehicle label
10 (50)	+ 14 / 1.4 / 2
0 (32)	+ 28 / 2.8 / 4
-10 (14)	+ 41 / 4.1 / 6

TYRE PRESSURE COMPENSATION - LOW AMBIENT TEMPERATURES

A colder ambient temperature will reduce pressure within the tyre. Sidewall height will decrease and tyre shoulder wear will increase with the potential for tyre failure. Vehicle dynamics could also be adversely affected.

Tyre pressures can be adjusted to compensate before the start of the journey. Alternatively, tyre pressures can be adjusted when the area of lower ambient temperature is reached.

Note: Ensure that correct tyre pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.

TYRE PRESSURE COMPENSATION - HIGH AMBIENT TEMPERATURES

In areas with high ambient temperature, tyre sidewalls can become softened. If the vehicle is stationary for an extended period the tyres may form flat spots.

Tyre pressures can be adjusted to minimise this effect.

Inflation pressure compensation	
Ambient temperature °C (°F)	Pressure compensation kPa / bar / psi
20 (68)	as vehicle label
30 (86)	+ 14 / 1.4 / 2
40 (104)	+ 28 / 2.8 / 4
50 (122)	+ 41 / 4.1 / 6

Note: Ensure that correct tyre pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.

TPM SYSTEM INFLATION PRESSURE COMPENSATION

If your vehicle is fitted with 18, 19 or 20 inch wheels with TPM system, they can be replaced with 17 inch wheels with TPM system, so enabling the use of snow chains or traction devices, however, tyre pressures will be different to those indicated on the vehicle information tyre label.

Tyre pressures of vehicles fitted with 17 inch wheels with TPM systems as standard are not affected. Tyre pressures for other wheel sizes should be adjusted as shown in the following table.

Inflation pressure (bar) with snow chains		
Original wheel size with TPM system	Replacement 17 inch wheels with TPM system	
	Front	Rear
18 inch	2.4	2.1
19 inch	2.5	2.2
20 inch	2.5	2.2

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In order to minimise flat spotting during long term parking, the tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum as stated on the tyre sidewall, for any long period while the vehicle is stationary. Tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every six years, but they may require replacement more frequently.

PUNCTURED TYRES



Do not drive the vehicle with a punctured tyre. Even if the punctured tyre has not deflated, it is unsafe to use, as the tyre may deflate suddenly at any time.

REPLACEMENT TYRES



- Do not fit cross ply tyres.
- Do not fit tubed tyres.
- Do not rotate tyres around the vehicle.
- If the use of tyres not recommended by Land Rover is unavoidable, ensure that you read and fully comply with the tyre manufacturer's instructions.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread as a visual reminder.

Ideally, tyres should be replaced in sets of 4. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and alignment checked.

USING WINTER TYRES

In many countries legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

M+S tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be replaced.

When changing to winter tyres, they must be fitted to all four wheels.

If the vehicle has TPMS but the winter use wheels and tyres are fitted with standard rubber valves, the TPM system will search for a signal. When it finds no response, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE** will be displayed in the Driver information centre.

When the original wheels are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance before the TPM system recognises the wheel sensors. At that point, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM AVAILABLE** will be displayed.

USING TRACTION DEVICES



Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on hard road surfaces.



Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.



Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.



Never fit traction devices to a temporary use spare wheel.

Land Rover approved traction devices may be used to improve traction on a hard road surface in heavy snow conditions. They should not be used in off-road conditions.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only Land Rover approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only Land Rover approved traction devices have been tested to ensure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the original equipment.
- **Do not** fit traction devices to 18, 19 or 20inch diameter wheels.
- Single sided Spike-spyder traction devices or snow chains can be fitted to only the front wheels of vehicles fitted with 17inch diameter wheels.
- Always read, understand and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions.
- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

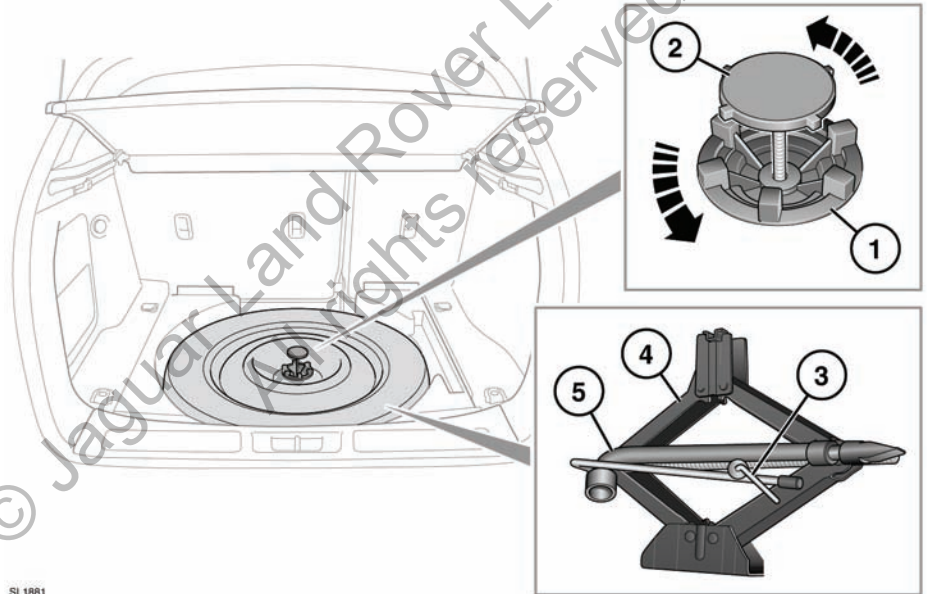
WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, ensure that you read and comply with the following warnings.

- ⚠ Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.
- ⚠ Ensure that the vehicle is on firm level ground.
- ⚠ Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles, select 1st or reverse gear on manual vehicles.

- ⚠ Switch on the hazard warning lamps.
- ⚠ Ensure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.
- ⚠ Disconnect trailer/caravan from vehicle.
- ⚠ Ensure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.
- ⚠ Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.

TOOL KIT



1. Temporary spare wheel locking ring.
2. Temporary spare wheel retaining bolt.
3. Tool kit retaining bolt.
4. Jack.

5. Wheel brace.

- ⚠ After use, the tool kit should be returned to the storage area and correctly stowed.

SL1881

Wheel changing



The spare wheel is heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting or manoeuvring the wheels.



Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the retaining bolt.

Note: Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL



Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.



Do not use power tools to loosen the spare wheel. Doing so may damage the mechanism.

1. To access the temporary spare wheel, fold forward the rear edge of the cover then remove it.
2. Turn the temporary spare wheel locking ring counter clockwise to gain access to the retaining bolt.
3. Turn the retaining bolt counter clockwise until it comes free.
4. Remove the temporary spare wheel.

IMPORTANT- USE OF SPARE TYRE



Adhere to the instructions on the temporary spare wheel warning label, affixed to the wheel.



Where fitted, the temporary spare wheel is **FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY**. Drive with caution while the temporary spare wheel is fitted. Ensure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.



Do not fit more than one temporary use spare wheel.



The temporary use spare wheel must be inflated to 4.2 bar (60 psi, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.



Temporary use spare wheel, maximum speed is 80 km/h (50 mph).



DSC must be switched on while the temporary spare wheel is in use.



Traction devices such as snow chains cannot be used with a temporary spare wheel.

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Note: Wheel chocks are not supplied as part of the tool kit.

Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle tool kit. Note the following advice when using wheel chocks.



Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.



Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.



If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of both wheels on the axle not being raised.

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Locking wheel nuts can be removed only by using the special adapter provided in the tool kit.

Note: When the vehicle is first supplied, the adapter may be stored in the glove compartment. It should be removed and stored in the tool kit as soon as possible.

Note: A code number is stamped onto the underside of the adapter. If a replacement adapter is required, you will be asked to quote this number. Ensure that the number is recorded and kept safe, but should not be kept with the vehicle.

1. Insert the wheel nut adapter into the locking wheel nut, ensuring that it is fully engaged.
2. Locate the wheel brace over the adapter and unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

Note: After use store the wheel nut adapter correctly in the tool kit.

WHEEL CHANGING

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, ensure that you read and comply with the following warnings.



Ensure that the jack is on firm level ground.



Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.



Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.



Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.



WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.



Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement, may cause an injury.



Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.



Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

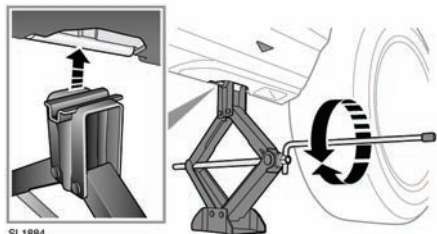
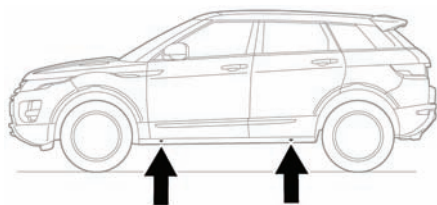


Jack up the vehicle using only the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Note: Your vehicle may be fitted with a tilt sensor which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See **59, VEHICLE INFORMATION AND SETTINGS MENU.**

Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts half a turn counter clockwise.

Wheel changing



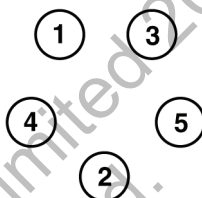
1. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point.

Note: Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point as damage may result.

Note: The Sports pack sills include arrows to identify jacking points.

2. Attach the cranking lever to the jack using the adaptor. Fit the wheel nut brace to the end of the cranking lever.
3. Rotate clockwise to raise until the jack pin locates into the jacking point.
4. Continue raising the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
6. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
7. Fit the temporary spare wheel to the hub.
8. Re-fit the wheel nuts and lightly tighten them. Ensure that the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.

9. Ensure that the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions and lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
10. With all wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts must be tightened in sequence (see illustration) to the correct torque of 133 Nm (98 lb.ft).



SL1140

Note: If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.

RECOVERY METHOD

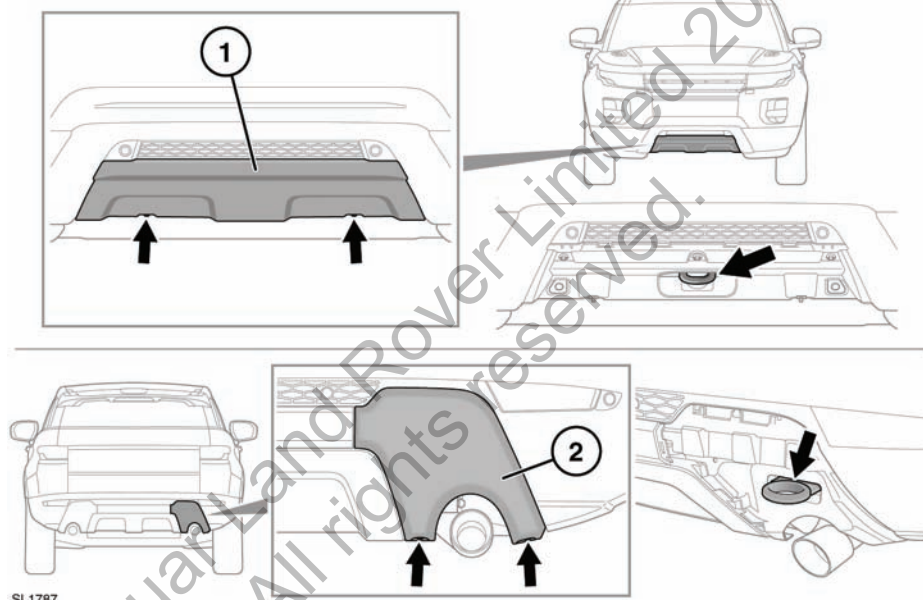
The method for recovery/ transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

Ensure that transportation is carried out by suitably qualified person and that the vehicle is secured correctly.

TOWING EYES



The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.



SL1787

The towing eyes are located behind panels in the bumpers. Panel design will vary depending on the vehicle specification. To use the towing eyes:

1. Front bumper - rotate the two fasteners 90 degrees counter clockwise. Pull the panel away from the front bumper.
2. Rear bumper - rotate the two fasteners 90 degrees counter clockwise. Pull the panel away from the rear bumper.

3. If the Dynamic pack is fitted, the exhaust finisher will also require removal before the towing eye can be used.

Installation of the panels is the reverse of removal.



Remove the towing eye covers before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY



If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training covering recovery techniques is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at <http://www.landroverexperience.com>

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS



If the vehicle battery is disconnected or disabled, do NOT attempt to tow the vehicle. Towing may result in serious damage to the transmission.

The vehicle should **NOT** be towed on all four wheels. However, if the vehicle cannot be recovered by using the correct method, please adhere to the following guidelines.



Do not remove the Smart Key from the vehicle as the steering column will lock after a time delay.



If the engine cannot be used during towing, there will be no power assistance to the braking system. This will result in much greater effort to stop the vehicle and in a greatly increased stopping distance.



Towing in a reverse direction with two wheels on the ground, will cause serious damage to the transmission.



Do not tow the vehicle if the gearbox cannot be set in neutral.



The following information is **NOT** recommended practice. With the front wheels suspended, the vehicle can be towed for a maximum of only 50km (30miles), at a maximum speed of

50km/h (30mph). Towing for a greater distance or at a higher speed, may result in serious damage to the transmission.

In an emergency, the vehicle can be towed on all four wheels for a very short distance but it is advisable to have the transmission checked by your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



If the engine is switched off with N selected, the transmission will wait for 10 minutes before selecting P. At this point if the vehicle is being towed, serious damage to the transmission will result. There is also a danger to personal safety.

The following procedure must be carried out:

1. Secure the towing attachment from the recovery vehicle to the front towing point.
2. With the foot brake applied, switch the ignition on to ensure the steering lock is disengaged.
3. Ensure the gear selector is in the neutral (N) position.
4. Leave the Smart Key in a secure place inside the vehicle.
5. Release the parking brake before towing the vehicle.



Leaving the ignition switched on for extended periods will drain the vehicle battery.

AFTER TOWING ON FOUR WHEELS

1. Apply the parking brake. For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, apply the footbrake and then select Park position.
2. Switch off the ignition and remove the Smart Key from the vehicle.
3. Remove the towing attachment and refit the cover panel to the front bumper.



Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING



If the vehicle is involved in a collision it should be checked by a Dealer/ Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified persons, before starting or driving.

EVENT DATA RECORDING

Event data recorders are capable of collecting and storing short sequences of data during a crash or near-crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The EDR may record information about vehicle dynamics and safety systems, potentially including such information as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

To access this information special equipment must be connected directly to the recording modules. Land Rover do not access EDR information without obtaining consent unless pursuant to a court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority.

Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Land Rover.

Note: *No personal data (e.g., name, gender, age and crash location) are recorded.*

LABEL LOCATIONS

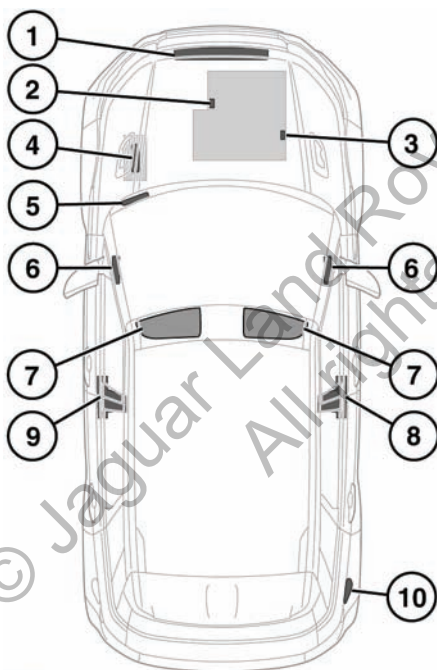


Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch is turned on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:



SL1903

1. Bonnet locking platform - Air conditioning label.

2. Engine identification information. Stamped into engine mounting flange.
3. Engine information label. Top right side of engine cover.
4. Top of battery - Battery warning symbols.
5. The VIN (Vehicle Identification Number) is stamped on a plate which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windscreen.

Note: If you need to communicate with a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.

6. End of fascia (passenger side) - Passenger airbag label.
7. Sun visor - Airbag label, vehicle handling label.
8. Base of right-hand B pillar - Tyre pressure label, Airbag warning label - Vehicle Identification Number plate (China).
9. Left-hand B pillar - Airbag warning label, Vehicle Identification Number plate (except China).
10. Inside fuel filler flap - Fuel specification label.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to ensure that your vehicle and its features are used safely.

VEHICLE BUILD DATE PLATE (Australia only)

This is the calendar month and year in which the body and power train assemblies were conjoined and the vehicle was driven from the production line.

The vehicle built date is shown on the tyre pressure label **8**.

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

SIEMENS VDO

A U T O M O T I V E

Siemens VDO Automotive AG, P.O. Box 10 59 43, D-30059 Regensburg

Name
Department
Tel.
Fax
E-Mail
Internet
Our Ref.
Date.

Dagmar Kolbe
Siemens AG
+49(0)941/700-6999
+49(0)941/700-136999
dagmar.kolbe@siemens.com
www.siemensvdo.de
Doc. S122780002.doc
09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Body & Chassis Electronics

Address:

Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: S122780002

Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used Tire Pressure Monitoring system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose.

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:

Applied standard(s):
EN 60950: 2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:
Applied standard(s):
EN 301 489 -1, -3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:
Applied standard(s):
EN 300 220 -1; V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-11-09

Jean Francois Tarablia
Jean-Francois Tarablia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

Dr. Martin Fischer
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Body & Chassis Electronics

Postal Address:

Siemens VDO Automotive AG
P.O. Box 10 59 43
D-30059 Regensburg

Helmuth Mauch

Klaus Müller

Office Address:
Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel.: +49(0)941/700-6
Fax: +49(0)941/700-9

Siemens VDO Automotive AG, Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Reuschel, Managing Director: Klaus Müller, Chairman of the Executive Board: Klaus Müller, Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Klaus Müller, Chairman of the Executive Board: Klaus Müller

Page 1 of 1

SIEMENS VDO

A U T O M O T I V E

Siemens VDO Automotive AG, P.O. Box 10 59 43, D-30059 Regensburg

Name
Department
Tel.
Fax
E-Mail
Internet
Our Ref.
Date.

Dagmar Kolbe
Siemens AG
+49(0)941/700-6999
+49(0)941/700-136999
dagmar.kolbe@siemens.com
www.siemensvdo.de
Doc. S122780002.doc
03/06/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Body & Chassis Electronics

Address:

Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG
Siemensstrasse 12
D-93049 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: 5WK4 9096

Intended use: Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose.

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:

Applied standard(s):
EN 60950:2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:
Applied standard(s):
EN 301 489 -1, -3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:
Applied standard(s):
EN 300 220-1; V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-08-03

Jean Francois Tarablia
Jean-Francois Tarablia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

Dr. Martin Fischer
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Body & Chassis Electronics

Helmuth Mauch

Klaus Müller

Postal Address:
Siemens VDO Automotive AG
P.O. Box 10 59 43
D-30059 Regensburg

Office Address:
Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel.: +49(0)941/700-6
Fax: +49(0)941/700-9

Siemens VDO Automotive AG, Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Reuschel, Managing Director: Klaus Müller, Chairman of the Executive Board: Klaus Müller, Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Klaus Müller, Chairman of the Executive Board: Klaus Müller

Page 1 of 1



LEAR Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
3155 Tenthredine Road
Southfield, MI 48034-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1549

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key facts

Land Rover, Range Rover.

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)

IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Jaguar)

Model #: AH22-19H440 (Range Rover, Land Rover)

Model #: AH22-19H440 (Jaguar)

Model #: AH23-15K601A (Range Rover)

Model #: AH23-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.



LEAR Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
3155 Tenthredine Road
Southfield, MI 48034-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1549

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A

IC: 3521-JLR09A

Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Passive Entry/Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A

IC: 3521-JBG10A (Jaguar)

Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)

Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B

IC: 3521-JBG10B

Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)

Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

SL1532

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID: KOBUBG108
Model Numbers: SE0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE
Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 330
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
AS/NZS 4288
FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation
Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID: KOBUBG10A
Model Numbers: SE0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440
Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 330
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
AS/NZS 4288
FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation
Date: 27 March 2009

SL1533

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC

Manufacturer: Lear Corporation

Type Designation: 5E0760127

Model Numbers: 5E0760127, 19K602, AH42-19K602-B, AH42-19K602-BC

Description / Intended Use: RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start systems for keyless entry, and the pressure monitoring systems

Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar

Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/20/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 220
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
ASINZS 4268

Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC

Manufacturer: Lear Corporation

Type Designation: 19K601

Model Numbers: 5E0950127, 5E0950127, 19K001-BB, AH42-19K601B, AH22-19K601B, AH42-19K601-BC, AH22-19K601-BC

Description / Intended Use: Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system key/job

Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover

Applied Standards: CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 220
ETSI EN 300 468
IEC EN 60950
ASINZS 4268

Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 25 March 2009

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

申請者：
製造廠商：
器材名稱：
廠牌/型號：
發射功率（電場強度）：
工作頻率：

Lear Corporation
Lear Corporation
Range Rover / SE0B60227
Range Rover / SE0B60227
315MHz
315MHz

七、發證日期：
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

98 年 06 月 02 日
CCAH09LP0550T5

備註：

1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.3.4.2 節之規定。
2. 本器材機體須貼附國家通訊傳播委員會公告，粘貼本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材所使用固定式或移動式型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

備註：

1. 請依下列標識式樣自製標識，標貼於印證之器材本體明顯處，倘得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 須將式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電力者，除依電信法規定處罰外，輸證機關(組)並得禁止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
4. 送審廠商應將送審產品之照片及規格。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標識僅供使用權者備查，不得轉讓他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。
6. 普通以傳播委員會備查後，再授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

申請者：
製造廠商：
器材名稱：
廠牌/型號：
發射功率（電場強度）：
工作頻率：

Lear Corporation
Lear Corporation
REA (Passive Start)
LEAR / SE0770337
125KHz; 61.5dBAV/m(Average)
125KHz

七、發證日期：
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

98 年 06 月 02 日
CCAH09LP0570T1

備註：

1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.2 節之規定。
2. 本器材機體須貼附國家通訊傳播委員會公告，粘貼本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材所使用固定式或移動式型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

備註：

1. 請依下列標識式樣自製標識，標貼於印證之器材本體明顯處，倘得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 須將式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電力者，除依電信法規定處罰外，輸證機關(組)並得禁止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
4. 送審廠商應將送審產品之照片及規格。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標識僅供使用權者備查，不得轉讓他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。
6. 普通以傳播委員會備查後，再授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

快特電波股份有限公司 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

- 一、申請者：
Lear Corporation
Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：
Range Rover FOR
Range Rover / SE0B50227
三、器材名稱：
四、廠牌/型號：
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz；84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
315MHz
六、工作頻率：

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

CCAH09LP0551T7

說明：

- 請依照下列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，並得確實或公開陳列。
- 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電力等者，除依電管法規定處罰外，並應撤銷(吊銷)其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
- 違章後應立即停止該產品之製造、銷售。
- 本型式認證證明及符合性標籤僅供用戶備查，不得作為他人於可競爭同型之設計，使用於其他設備。業經認證者應負維護品質之責任，並應接受他人於可競爭同型之設計，使用於其他設備。

備註：

- 本型符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2 節之規定。
- 本型核准標籤由技術委員會審定，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本型所用使用方式及核准同型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

快特電波股份有限公司 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

- 一、申請者：
Lear Corporation
Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：
RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
LEAR / SE070237
三、器材名稱：
四、廠牌/型號：
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz；63.3dBuV/m(Average)
125KHz
六、工作頻率：

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

CCAH09LP0560T8

說明：

- 請依照下列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，並得確實或公開陳列。
- 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電力等者，除依電管法規定處罰外，並應撤銷(吊銷)其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
- 違章後應立即停止該產品之製造、銷售。
- 本型式認證證明及符合性標籤僅供用戶備查，不得作為他人於可競爭同型之設計，使用於其他設備。業經認證者應負維護品質之責任，並應接受他人於可競爭同型之設計，使用於其他設備。

備註：

- 本型符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2 節之規定。
- 本型核准標籤由技術委員會審定，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本型所用使用方式及核准同型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A



Continental Automotive GmbH - Postfach 101 55 - 93099 Regensburg

Kolmar Dagmar
AOL RBG 42
Phone +49 (0)41 794-6069
Fax +49 (0)41 794-6070
dagmar.kolmar@continental-corporation.com

Date: July 20, 2008
Your message dated: [blank]
Our Reference: [blank]
Your reference: [blank]

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Eisenstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany
Product Type designation: S180 052 020 A
Intended use: Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1: 2006
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: Applied standard(s): EN 301 489 -1; V1.6.1 (2005-09)
EN 301 489 -3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1; V2.1.1 (2006-04)
EN 300 220 -2; V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 200807-29

Signature: [Signature]
Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH
Eisenstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany
Phone +49 (0)41 794-6069
Fax +49 (0)41 794-6070
www.continental-corporation.com

快特電波股份有限公司 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者: Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商: Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱: Jaguar fob
四、廠牌型號: JAGUAR / 5E0B4P21P7
五、發射功率 (電場強度): 315MHz; 83.225dBm/m(peak)
六、工作頻率: 315MHz

七、審驗日期: 98 年 07 月 01 日

八、審驗合格標籤式樣:



說明:

- 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，並將證書或公司條例，註明式樣部分之低功率射頻電機，為證。設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式。
- 該器材之低功率射頻電機應符合本證明之規定，擅自使用或變更者將受法律處分，電力非受，除收受及發射電波外，不得有其他用途，如：發射、接收、射頻性能等，應符合本證明之規定。
- 該器材應符合本證明之規定，不得有損他人之健康，應符合本證明之規定，應符合本證明之規定。
- 本證明之有效期間為三年，自發證之日起算，逾期應重新申請型式。
- 本證明之有效期間為三年，自發證之日起算，逾期應重新申請型式。

備註:

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 (LP09003.4.2 節) 之規定。
- 輸證機構係指國家通訊傳播委員會，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材使用圖式代碼，應詳列為：Lear Corporation / N/A。

연구자문서화인번호

V7SG-VXVD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

[illegible]

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under
the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.



天

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

© 2004 Blackwell Publishing Ltd, *Journal of Internal Medicine* 255: 103–110

[illegible]

의자문시화이번호.

NC49-Y219-MT4V-13780

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식번호(Type Registration)	530303P127	530303P127	Low Automotive Electronics and Electrical Equipment	LAN20-100-433-927-0 12580-003FD1	2009년(Year) 08월(Month) 22일(Date)
인주의 종류 (Certificate Type)	상호 또는 직접 (Trade Name or Applicant)	기부도입형 (Donation)	제조국 (Country of Origin)	型式記號 (Model Number)	型式證明書 (Type Identification Certificate)
제출 또는 신청 (Trade Name or Applicant)	기기의 명칭 (Equipment Name)	과도도입형 (Overseas Import)	제조국 (Country of Origin)	型式記號 (Model Number)	型式證明書 (Type Identification Certificate)
제출 또는 신청 (Trade Name or Applicant)	기기의 명칭 (Equipment Name)	과도도입형 (Overseas Import)	제조국 (Country of Origin)	型式記號 (Model Number)	型式證明書 (Type Identification Certificate)

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전자법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under
the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.



8

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory
Korea Communications Commission, Republic of Korea

© 2005 The Authors
Journal compilation © 2005 Blackwell Publishing Ltd

1000 900 800 700 600 500 400 300 200 100 0

전자통신위원회

7578-CPU-1001-001-1

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록(Type Registration)

인증의 종류

Certification Type

상호 또는 상품명

Trade Name or Applicant

기기의 명칭

Equipment Name

기본모델명

Basic Model Number

파생모델명

Series Model Number

인증번호

Certification No.

제조자/제조사

Manufacturer/Country of Origin

형식기호

Type Identification

인증연월일

Date of Certification

기타

Others

LEAR CORPORATION

비야 전자공업 주식회사

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

위 기기는 「전기통신기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)



전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자통신위원회

JVC-AQ-884C-1001

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록(Type Registration)

인증의 종류

Certification Type

상호 또는 상품명

Trade Name or Applicant

기기의 명칭

Equipment Name

기본모델명

Basic Model Number

파생모델명

Series Model Number

인증번호

Certification No.

제조자/제조사

Manufacturer/Country of Origin

형식기호

Type Identification

인증연월일

Date of Certification

기타

Others

LEAR CORPORATION

비야 전자공업 주식회사

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

580770237

위 기기는 「전기통신기법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)



전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

전자통신위원회

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Small Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002 Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

A-2009/303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2003 (Act 36 of 2003), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 35(2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (the "Conditions"), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and registration number are indicated below.

Company Particulars

Jaguar Land Rover SA
Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton
012 842 3274
012 845 1005
2001/0277699/07

Description of Apparatus

Remote Function Actuator (RFA)
KOBJBG10A
119 – 135 kHz
12KG1D
BPSK
+40.7 Dbm/m @ 3m

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Chilton
Chilton Motor Vehicle

9 JUN 2009

■ **Minshiko (Chairperson)**, NA Butye, T.V. Makhasehe, R. Mkhuna, SB Ntshondla, FK Sibandze, Dr MM Sos. Awa, Prof. JCM van Rooyen SC, MM Zokhe (Co-councillors), BK Morlana (CEO).



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Will Form, 164 Katherine Street, Sandhurst
Private Box X10002 Sandhurst 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35(1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 35(2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby over-leases, hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and details are set out below.

Company Particulars

Jaguar Land Rover SA
Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton
012 842 3274
012 845 1005
004102756007

Description of Apparatus

Remote Function Actuator (RFA)
KOBUBG10B
119 - 135 kHz
12KG1D
8P5K
+37.7 Dba/m @ 3m

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

PhiloLife

10

P Maschke (Chairperson), NA Bielefeld, TLV Mannheim, HK Sibunde, De ATM Storkhof
Deaf, IMC (see German), C⁺, 1813 Tobias, C⁺ (see below) **RR Mullins** / FEO



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Postal Form 164 Kolorado Street, Sandton
Phone Reg 310002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-30063085

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby grants a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name: Jaguar Land Rover SA
Street Address: Simon Vermooden Road, Silverton
Postal Address: 015 842 3274
Facsimile Number: 015 842 3274
Registration Number: 2091102726807

Description of Apparatus

Category: Key Fob Transmitter
Model: 156601
Frequency Range: 433.92 MHz
ITU Emission Code: 739K01D
Modulation: ASK, FSK
Power Output: -14.8 dBm
Channel Spacing: -
Features: -

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philimon Molele
Philimon Molele
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2018

P Molele (Chairperson), NA Bate, TLV Makubela, at Nauni, BB Numbala, FK Sibande, DE M M Sookhai,
Post 1730 van Rensburg ST, MM Zikwe (Councillors), BK Molana (CEO)



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Postal Form 164 Kolorado Street, Sandton
Phone Reg 310002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-30063084

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby grants a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name: Jaguar Land Rover SA
Street Address: Simon Vermooden Road, Silverton
Postal Address: 015 842 3274
Facsimile Number: 015 842 3274
Registration Number: 2091102726807

Description of Apparatus

Category: Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver
Model: 560780127
Frequency Range: 434.19 MHz
ITU Emission Code: 739K01D
Modulation: ASK, FSK
Power Output: -
Channel Spacing: -
Features: -

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philimon Molele
Philimon Molele
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2018

P Molele (Chairperson), NA Bate, TLV Makubela, at Nauni, BB Numbala, FK Sibande, DE M M Sookhai



ALPINE ELECTRONICS INC.
204 Vespa Road, Suite 100, Fremont, CA 94538-1111
Phone: (415) 246-5841 Fax: (415) 246-5850

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, Alpine Electronics, Inc. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1990/25/EEC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed hereunder.

Product : Bluetooth Module
Model Type Number : IAM 2.1 BT FWE EU
Directive and Standards used : Radio: EN 300 228 V1.2.1: 200610
EMC: EN 301 488-17 V1.3.1: 200804
EN 301 488-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04
EN 300 341-2: 2004
IS07475-2: 2004
Safety IEC 60950 Ed.2: 2001 - Amd.1: 2005
EN 60945: 2002 - Amd.1: 2006

Year of attesting CE marking : 2009

Signature : S. (Signature)

Name : Shiroshi Atake

Date : November 12, 2009



Label to be used on the following products only:

- citizen band radio equipment
- cellular equipment
- trunk radio equipment
- spread spectrum devices
- leased channel radio equipment
- cordless telephone
- wireless security devices
- wireless microphone
- radio-control equipment
- medical & biology telemetry equipment

REPÚBLICA FEDERATIVA DO BRASIL
ANATEL

Certificado de Homologação
(Interinstitucional)

Nº 0818-10-003
Unidade Interinstitucional
Emissão: 10/05/2010

Emissora:

LEARN DO BRASIL COM INTERCOMUNICAÇÕES AUTOMOTIVAS LTDA
RUA CARLOS DE ALMEIDA, 200 - JARDIM
12240-000 - CAJALMA - SP

Fabricante:

LEARN AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICOMAGNETIC ELECTRIC PRODUCT
RUA JOSE GONCALVES DE OLIVEIRA, 207
SANTOANA - CEARÁ

Este documento homologa, nos termos do Regulamento para Certificação e Homologação de Produtos para Intercomunicação, aprovado pela Comissão de Regulação da Anatel, o produto descrito no quadro abaixo, para uso em veículos automotores, servindo para a emissão do **Brasileiro de Certificação**. Este homologação é emitida em nome do **unidade interinstitucional** e a validação conferida a produtos a seguir descritos, cuja utilização não dependa de condições estabelecidas no regulamento e não implique na aplicação a que se destinam.

Tipos: Dispositivos de Operação Portátil - Categoria B

Modelos:

KOB/JF18A

Características:

Radioemissiones em Radiação Isotrópica

Características Técnicas:

Potência Transmissora Máxima em Campo Eletromagnético		
Modo	Modo	Modo
FM/AM	FM/AM	FM
100W	100W	100W
100W	100W	100W

Modulação: 100% - FSK; Comprimento de Pulsa: 200ms; Largura de Banda: 12,5kHz; Frequência: 2,4GHz

Emissão de SAR: Não aplicável, pois o produto não é projetado para ser usado próximo ao corpo humano.

Observações:

No caso de produtos devolvidos para reavaliar os conteúdos de seus conteúdos estabelecidos no Regulamento sobre Enquadramento de Radioemissiones de Rádio de Banda.

Condições de uso: O produto deve ser utilizado em conformidade com as condições estabelecidas no Regulamento sobre Enquadramento de Radioemissiones de Rádio de Banda. O produto deve ser utilizado em conformidade com as condições estabelecidas no Regulamento sobre Enquadramento de Radioemissiones de Rádio de Banda. O produto deve ser utilizado em conformidade com as condições estabelecidas no Regulamento sobre Enquadramento de Radioemissiones de Rádio de Banda.

As informações constantes deste certificado de homologação podem ser consultadas no SCD - Sistema de Gestão de Certificação e Homologação, disponível no portal da Anatel (www.anatel.gov.br).

Assinatura: Salomoni Salomoni
Gerente Geral de Certificação e
Engenharia de Qualidade

[illegible]

A

ABS warning indicator	87
Accessories	185
Adaptive dynamics	94
Adaptive front lighting system (AFS)	42
AFS	42
Air recirculation	67
Airbag label locations	243
Airbag service information	38
Airbag warning lamp	38
Airbags	35
components	35
deployment	38
disabling	37
maintenance	185
operation	35
Alarm	
arming	12
arming confirmation	12
deactivating when triggered	8
deactivation	4
disarming	4
tilt sensor	15
Alarm system	15
Ambient lighting	45, 111
Answer a telephone call	178
Audio	
balance	115
CD	126
DAB radio	121
fade	115
portable audio	126
settings	115
television controls	130
tone	115
touch screen operation	109

Audio (Standard)

CD eject	165
CD load	165
controls	165
iPod	175
mode selection	165
portable audio	175
seek up/down	165
settings	165
USB devices	175
volume	165
Audio (Standard) overview	165
Audio/video (Touch screen)	
CD/DVD operation	113
controls	113
mode selection	113
overview	113
seek up/down	113
settings	113
volume	113
Auto lamps	40
windscreen wiper detection	42
Automatic climate control	67
controls	67
Automatic transmission	
automatic mode	84
Auxiliary heater	68
remote control	71
Auxiliary input socket	127
Auxiliary power sockets	73

B

Battery care	205
Battery changing	208
Battery disconnection	208
Battery warning symbols	205
Beltminder	28
Blind spot monitor	54
sensor blockage	55
system fault	55

Bluetooth	144	CD (Standard)	
audio devices	126, 175	controls	173
compatibility	144	eject	165
connecting a media device	128	load	165
connecting a phone	147	MP3 files	173
pairing a media device	128	playback	173
pairing a phone	147	repeat	173
Bluetooth (Standard audio)	177	shuffle	173
compatibility	176	skip/scan	173
Bonnet lock	198	track list	173
Booster cables	206	CD/DVD	
Booster cushions	32	eject	113
Brake and clutch fluid check	202	load	113
Brake fluid		Changing a bulb	187
topping up	204	Changing a fuse	210
Brakes		Changing a road wheel	
braking on steep slopes	87	locking wheel nuts	236
important information	87	safety issues	235
pedal travel (China only)	219	temporary spare wheel	236
Bulb changing	187	tool kit	235
xenon lamp	187	wheel changing safety	237
Bulb specification chart	221	wheel chocks	236
C		Changing the vehicle battery	208
Camera systems		disconnecting	208
hitch assist	107	effects of disconnecting	208
surround cameras	106	replacement batteries	208
Capacities	218	Child locks	25
Car wash	194	Child seats	29
CD	126	anchor points	31
controls	124	attaching tether straps	34
loading	126	check list	31
MP3 playback	126	Isofix anchor points	31
playback	124	Isofix installation	33
repeat	124	positioning	30
shuffle	124	recommended seats	30
skip/scan	124	safety	31
supported formats	126	tether anchorage points	33
touch screen operation	124	tether straps	33
track list	124		
virtual player	126		
virtual store	124		

Cleaning

after off-road driving	194
airbag module covers	196
audio system	196
carpets	196
cloth and fabric	195
exterior	194
glass surfaces	195
instrument panel	196
interior	195
leather care	195
mats	196
rear screen	195
seat belts	196
sensors	194
touch screen	196
under body	194
wheels	195
with white spirit	194
Climate control	67
water deposits	68
Clock	59, 110
Clock setting	
standard audio system	167
Clutch	
pedal travel (China only)	219
Clutch fluid	
topping up	204
CO2 emissions	91
Connecting a phone	147
Connecting a portable media device	127, 175
Connecting auxiliary devices	127
Coolant check	201
Courtesy delay (headlamps)	41
Cruise control	90
auto switch off	91
cancelling	90
setting the speed	90
Cruise eco data	91
Cup holders	72

D

DAB

announcements	121
autotune	121
channel information	121
channel list	121
channel up/down	121
controls	121
ensembles	123
radio	121
reception	123
settings	121
station presets	121
subchannels	121
text	121
touch screen operation	121
wave band selection	121
Data recording	186, 242
Daytime running lamps	40
Dialling	178
Diesel misfuel protection device	181
Diesel particulate filter regeneration	83
Digital radio	121
Dimensions	220
brake pedal travel (China only)	219
pedal travel (China only)	219
wheel alignment data (China only)	219
Disability modifications	185
occupant safety	38
Disabling the passenger airbag	37
Disarming the alarm	
deactivating the alarm when triggered	8
smart key failure	7
Display icons	109
Door locks	15
global entry	6
keyless entry	7
multi point entry	6
single point entry	6
unlocking	4
Door mirrors	51
Double locking	12
DPF regeneration	83

Drawbar dimensions	78	Engine starting	80
Drive selector	84	no engine cranking	80
Drive-away locking	14	Engine switch off	
Driver information centre	59, 61	with the vehicle moving	81
Driving after a collision	242	Essential towing checks	76
before starting or driving	242	Ethanol fuel	
Dual view display	134	Brazil only	179
Dual view display selection	134	Event data recording	242
Dual view screen		Exterior mirrors	51
control menu	135	adjusting and folding	51
DVD		mirror dip when reversing	52
controls	132	External temperature	59
supported formats	126		
DVD discs	126	F	
DVD operation in dual view display	136	Facia	272
E		Fastening the seat belts	25
Easy entry and exit	20	Flat spots	233
Eco button	82	Fluids	
Electric seats	18	brake fluid top-up	204
seatback tilt	21	clutch fluid top-up	204
Electric windows		engine coolant top-up	201
overriding anti-trap protection	50	engine oil top-up	200
window reset	50	washer fluid top-up	204
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)	88	Front seats	
Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)	87	correct adjustment	19
Emission control system	186	electric	18
Ending a telephone call	178	head restraints	23
Engine		manual	17
rolling re-start	81	memory seats	20
Engine compartment overview	199	Fuel burning heater	68
Engine coolant check		remote control	71
checking the coolant level	201	Fuel consumption	183
topping up	201	Fuel filler flap	181
Engine fails to start	81	Fuel gauge	59
Engine oil check	200		
checking the oil level	200		
oil specification	201		
topping up	200		
Engine specifications	217		
Engine stall	83		

Fuel quality	179	Gearbox	
diesel engines	180	CommandShift mode	85
ethanol	179	drive mode	85
ethanol - Brazil	179	drive selector	85
methanol	179	drive selector fails to elevate	86
MTBE	180	kick-down	85
octane rating	179	neutral	85
petrol engines	179	reverse	85
reformulated gasoline	180	reverse gear	85
sulphur content	180	sport mode	85
Fuel specification	182	Gearbox fault	86
Fuel tank capacity	182	Gearshift indicator	86
Fuse box locations	209	Global closing	13
Fuse specification chart		keyless locking	14
engine compartment fuse box	211	Gradient acceleration control	96
luggage compartment fuse box	216	Gradient release control	99
passenger compartment fuse box	213		
Fuses	209	H	
access	209	Hazard warning flashers	43
changing	210	HDC	98
engine compartment	211	Head restraints	
locations	209	front seats	23
luggage compartment fuses	216	integrated	23
passenger compartment fuses	213	rear seats	23
replacement	210	Headlamp levelling	42
		halogen headlamps	42
G		Headlamp washers	47
Garage door opener	56	Headlamps	40
Garage door transceiver		adaptive front lighting (AFS)	42
erase all programming	57	auto lamps	40
information and assistance	58	condensation inside the lens	42
programming	56	courtesy delay	41
reprogramming a single garage door opener		driving abroad	42
button	57	exit delay	40
rolling code devices	57	high beam assist	41
		low beam	40
		Heated mirrors	52
		Heated screens	67
		Heated seats	67
		Heated steering wheel	39
		Heating	67
		High beam assist	41

Hill descent control	98
operation	98
Hill start assist.	96
Hill start brake hold	99
Hitch assist camera	107
Home menu	108
Homelink	
erase all programming	57
garage door opener	56
information and assistance	58
programming	56
reprogramming a single garage door opener button	57
rolling code devices	57

I

Ignition	
rolling re-start	81
switching off with the vehicle moving ..	81
Ignition on	80
Information messages	61
Installing an Isofix child restraint	33
Instrument panel overview	59
Interior lamps	44
rear interior lighting	44
Interior mirror	52
auto dimming	52
manual dimming	52
iPod connection	126, 127, 175
Isofix anchor points	31
installation	33
Isofix child seat	
installation	33
Isofix child seats	31

J

Jump starting	206
---------------------	-----

K

Keyless entry	7
Keyless locking	14

L

Label locations	243
Lashing eyes	75
LED interior lights	45
Licensing information	
DivX	116
Dolby	116
dts	116
gracenote	116
Lighting	40
exterior	40
Lighting control	
headlamp courtesy delay	41
Lights	40
adaptive front lighting (AFS)	42
auto lamps	40
exterior	40
fog lamps	40
headlamp courtesy delay	41
headlamps	40
headlamps exit delay	40
high beam assist	41
low beam	40
sidelights	40
Load carrying	74
Locking	
child locks	25
drive-away locking	14
global closing	13
keyless global closing	14
keyless locking	14
mislock	13
valet mode	111
Locking and unlocking	
confirmation	12
from inside the vehicle	15
valet mode deselecting	8
valet mode selecting	15
Locking wheel nuts	236
Locks	
changing the smart key battery	11
Low beam	40
Lubricants and fluids	217

Luggage anchor points	75
Luggage area	74

M

Maintenance	
airbag system	185
arduous conditions	184
brake fluid top-up	204
clutch fluid top-up	204
dynamometer testing	185
engine coolant top-up	201
engine oil top-up	200
general information	184
owner	184
regular checks	184
rolling road testing	185
technical specifications	217
washer fluid top-up	204
Manual seats	17
Manual transmission	86
Mapping data	150
Media device connection (Standard audio)	175
Media hub (portable media)	175
Memory seats	
coupe passenger seat	20
easy entry and exit	20
front seats positions	20
Menu	
touch screen	108
Message centre	59, 61
Messages	61
Mirrors	
automatic powerfold	52
blind spot monitor	54
exterior	51
operation	51
powerfold	51
reverse auto-dip	52
MP3	126
Multi point entry	6

N

Navigation	
cancel voice guidance	154
compass selection	153
controls	151
coordinates	155
dealer locations	156
digitised area	150
easy route	154
emergency search	155
entry by town name	156
learn route	154
main menu	151
mapping data	150
memory points	155
off road	160
points of interest	154, 156
postcode search	155
screen modes	153
search area	153
setting a destination	153
split screen map	152
starting guidance	154
stop route guidance	154
things you need to know	150
traffic message channel (TMC)	157
traffic message channel (TMC) icons ..	158
turning on	150
vehicle position error	150
Navigation off road	
compass view	161
new route	160
route options	160
using a stored route	160
News announcements	120
O	
Occupant safety	
disability modifications	38
Off road navigation	160
Off road recovery	240

Off-road driving	
Wading	96
Off-road driving guidance	95
Oil check	200
Oil specification	201
Opening and closing the bonnet	198

P

Paint	
damage repair	197
Pairing a phone	147
Panoramic roof blind	49
Park assist	
cleaning the sensors	194
hands off parking	100
parallel parking	100
principle of operation	100
sensor care	194
Park slot detection	
system fault	103
Parking aid	
cleaning the sensors	194
principle of operation	104
rear camera	105
sensor care	194
towing	77, 105
Parking brake	
applying	88
releasing	88
Passenger airbag	
disabling	37
Phone	144, 146
Phone (Standard audio)	177
Phonebook	148
POI voice commands	142
Portable audio	126
connections	126
playing a device	127
Portable audio (Standard)	175
Bluetooth	175
connections	175

Portable media	126, 175
bluetooth	128
connecting a bluetooth device	128
connections	126, 175
playing a bluetooth device	128
Powered tailgate	
opening clearance	77
opening height	10
operation	9
while towing	77

R

Radio	
alternative frequencies (AF)	120
autostore	119
channel up/down	119
controls	119
DAB	121
enhanced other networks (EON)	120
news announcements	120
Radio Data System (RDS)	120
regionalisation (REG)	120
settings	119
station list	119
station presets	119
text	119
touch screen operation	119
traffic announcements	119, 120
wave band selection	119
Radio (Standard)	
autostore	167
channel up/down	167
clock setting	167
controls	167
display language	167
RDS	167
regionalisation	167
settings	167
station presets	167
traffic announcements	167
wave band selection	167
Rain sensor	47

Rear camera	105
Rear loadspace	74
Rear media	137
connecting a video device	138
head phones	140
remote control	139
Rear seat entertainment	
remote control	139
Rear seat entertainment (RSE)	137
Rear seats	
folding	22
head restraints	23
Rear view mirrors	51
Rear window washer	48
Rear window wiper	48
Recommended towing weights	76
Recovery by towing	240
Recovery by transporter	239
Refuelling	181
diesel misfuel protection	181
fuel filler	181
fuel specification	182
tank capacity	182
Rejecting telephone call	178
Remote control	
care	11
changing the battery	11
unlocking	4
Replacing wiper blades	193
Restraints	29
Rolling re-start	81
Roof blind	49
Roof racks	74
maximum load	74
vehicle stability	74
RSE	
introduction	137
remote control	139
settings	138
supervisor screen	137
Running out of fuel	180

S

Safety	
airbags	35
child locks	25
child seats	29
child seats check list	31
seat belt checks	27
using a telephone	144, 176
Safety precautions	179
Say what you see	141
Seat belt reminder	28
Seat belts	25
beltminder	28
fastening a seat belt	25
height adjustment	25
releasing a seat belt	25
safety	27
safety checks	27
use during pregnancy	25
warning lamp	28
Seats	
child seats	29
Selecting dual view display	134
Service interval indicator	61
Servicing	
interval indicator	61
Settings	59
Sidelights	40
Single locking	12
Single point entry	6
Sitting in the correct position	19
Smart key	
care	11
changing the battery	11
unlocking	4
Snow chains	233, 234
TPM system inflation compensation	233
Spare wheel removal	236
Speech activation	141
Speedometer	59
SRS (Supplementary restraint system)	35
Stability control	92
adaptive dynamics	94

Stalling the engine	83	Telephone	144
Starting a diesel engine	80	bluetooth	144
manual transmission	80	call divert	146
Starting a petrol engine	80	call volume	148
starting	80	changing phone	148
Starting navigation guidance	154	compatibility	144
Starting problems	81	connecting	147
Starting the engine	80	controls	145, 146
no engine cranking	80	digit dial	146, 148
Steering column lock	8	ending a call	146
Steering wheel		general information	144
adjusting position	39	last 10 option	149
heated	39	making a call	146
telephone controls	145	pairing	147
Stop/Start	82	phonebook	148
disabling	82	safety	144, 176
problems	82	status	146
Storage areas	72	touch screen icons	148
Supplementary restraints system	35	touch screen operation	146
Surround camera system	106	voice mail	146
camera setting	106	Telephone (Standard audio)	177
proximity view	106	answer a call	178
special views	106	Bluetooth	177
Switching off the engine		call volume	178
with the vehicle moving	81	compatibility	176
Switching the ignition on	80	connecting a mobile phone	178
T		dialling	178
Tachometer	59	end call	178
Tailgate		general information	177
manual	8	making a phone call	178
opening height	10	rejecting incoming call	178
operating	8	Television	
powered	8	channel list	130
programmed opening height	10	channel selection	130
Technical specifications		controls	130
capacities	218	digital/analogue selection	130
engine data	217	full screen controls	131, 133
fuel consumption	183	preset channels	130
fuel specification	182	seek up/down	130
lubricants and fluids	217	touch screen operation	130
		Temperature gauge	59
		Terrain response	
		controls	95

- Tether straps 33
- Tilt sensor 15
- Time and date setting
 - standard audio system 167
- Timed climate 69
 - remote control 71
 - remote control batteries 71
 - via the remote control 69
 - via the touch screen 69
- Tone adjustment 166
- Touch screen 108
 - ambient lighting 108
 - audio controls 109
 - care 111
 - CD controls 124
 - connecting a phone 147
 - DAB controls 121
 - deselecting valet mode 8, 111
 - display icons 109
 - dual view 134
 - extra features 111
 - home menu 108, 109
 - language settings 110
 - pairing a phone 147
 - pop-ups 109
 - radio controls 119
 - screen settings 110
 - selecting valet mode 15, 111
 - set-up 110
 - system settings 110
 - telephone controls 146
 - telephone icons 148
 - television controls 130
 - touch screen use 109
 - video media controls 132
 - voice settings 110
- Tow ball options 78
- Tow recovery 240
- Towing
 - advice 76
 - electrical connections 77
 - essential checks 76
 - tailgate clearance 77
 - tow ball options 78
 - trailer levelling 76
 - weights 76
- Towing a trailer 76
- Towing for recovery 239
- Towing points
 - front and rear towing eyes 239
- TPM system
 - Inflation compensation with snow chains 233
- TPM system messages 223
- TPM (Tyre Pressure Monitoring) system
 - replacement sensor 224
- Traction control 93
- Traction devices 233, 234
- Traffic announcements 120
- Trailer hitch 78
- Trailer levelling 76
- Trailer stability assist 77
- Transmission
 - CommandShift mode 85
 - drive mode 85
 - drive selector 85
 - drive selector fails to elevate 86
 - kick-down 85
 - neutral 85
 - reverse 85
 - reverse gear 85
 - sport mode 85
- Transmission fault 86
- Transmitter locations 222
- Transporter recovery 239

Trip computer	61
average fuel consumption	61
average speed	61
changing the display	61
ML-km (also Miles-litre)	61
range	61
service interval indicator	61
trip distance	61
Trip recorder	59
Turning on the ignition	80
TV	130
TV operation in dual view display	136
Type approvals	244
declarations of conformity	244
Tyre care	230
Tyre changing	
TPM system valve	224
Tyre pressure label location	243
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)	223
Tyre pressures	231
245/45 R20 tyres	231
checking	230
Tyre repair kit	225
checking the tyre pressure after a repair	228
Land Rover tyre repair kit	226
Land Rover tyre repair kit safety information	225
using the Land Rover tyre repair kit	227
Tyres	
age degradation	233
flat spots	233
India declaration	230
pressure compensation during high temperatures	233
pressure compensation for temperature changes	232
replacing	234
TPM system inflation compensation	233
tyre pressure label	231
using snow chains	233, 234
using traction devices	233, 234
winter use	234

U

Unlocking with keyless entry	7
Upholstery care	195
USB connection	127
USB devices	126
USB devices (Standard audio)	175
USB video files	126
Using booster cables	206
Using cruise control	
engaging	90
increasing speed	90
reducing speed	90
resuming a set speed	90
suspending	90
Using HDC	98
selecting HDC	98
Using seat belts during pregnancy	25
Using stability control	92
deactivating	92
DSC	92
reactivating	92
Using terrain response	95
before driving off-road	95
override options	96
Using the parking aid	
system fault	105
Using the remote control	
locking	12
Using the smart key	
locking	12
Using traction control	93
Electronic Traction Control (ETC)	93

V

Valet mode	111
deselecting	8, 111
PIN entry	111
selecting	15, 111
Vehicle battery changing	208
Vehicle battery disconnection	208
Vehicle build date plate	243
Vehicle build plate location	243

Vehicle information and settings menu . . .	59	Warning messages	61
Vehicle recovery	239	Washer fluid check	204
off road	240	topping up	204
Vehicle settings	59	Washer jets	
Ventilation	67	cleaning	197
Video media player		Washers	
angle	132	drip wipe	47
controls	132	headlamp	47
GOTO	132	rear	48
settings	132	Washing	194
subtitles	132	cloth and fabric	195
tools	132	glass surfaces	195
VIN label locations	243	rear screen	195
Voice commands		wheels	195
POI	142	Weights	219
Voice control	141	Wheel changing	237
command list	141	Wheel changing safety	235
help mode	141	Wheel changing tools	235
operating guide	142	Wheel chocks	236
training	142	Wheel nuts	
tutorial	142	locking	236
user recognition	142	Wheels	
voice button	141	alignment data (China only)	219
voice recognition	142	cleaning	195
voicetags	142	Wheels and tyres	
Voice mail	146	technical specifications	221
Voice settings	110	Windows	49
recognising a particular accent	110	anti-trap protection	50
recognising a particular voice	110	operation	49
teaching the system	110	resonance	50
Volume control		roof blind	49
automatic volume control (AVC)	166	window isolator	49
Volume presets	110	Windscreen washer jets	
		blocked jets	197
Wading depth	96	Windscreen wiper detection	42
Warning lamps	63	Windscreen wipers	46
primary warnings	63	drip wipe	47
seat belt	28	rain sensor	47
secondary warnings	63	single wipe	46
status check at ignition on	63	speed sensitive	47
system status	63	wiper operation	46
		Winter tyres	234
		Wiper blade replacement	193

Wiper detection	42
Wipers	
rear	48
Wipers - front and rear	
winter park position	47

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2013.
All rights reserved.

CONTROLS

For further information on the numbered item, refer to the page number in brackets.

1. Roof blind switch **(49)**.
2. Front interior courtesy lamp **(44)**.
3. Front map/reading lamps **(44)**.
4. Exterior lights/trip computer control **(40)** and **(61)**.
5. Audio system control **(113)** and **(165)**.
6. Instrument panel and Driver information centre **(59)**.
7. Instrument panel menu control **(59)**.
8. Wipers and washers control **(46)**.
9. START/STOP button **(80)**.
10. Touch screen display **(108)**.
11. Audio system **(113)** and **(165)**.
12. Hazard warning lights switch.
13. Heater/Air conditioning **(67)**.
14. Hill Descent Control (HDC) switch **(98)**.
15. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) switch **(92)**.
16. Automatic transmission drive selector **(84)**.
17. Terrain response **(95)**.
18. Manual transmission gear lever **(86)**.
19. ECO switch **(82)**.
20. Electric parking brake **(88)**.
21. Audio on/off/volume switch **(113)** and **(165)**.
22. Upshift gear paddle **(84)**.
23. Cruise control cancel switch **(90)**.
24. Cruise control switches **(90)**.
25. Steering column adjustment lever **(39)**.
26. Horn.
27. Telephone and voice control switches **(145)** and **(167)**.
28. Headlamp levelling control **(42)**.
29. Interior illumination control.
30. Bonnet release lever.
31. Tailgate release/open switch.
32. Heated steering wheel switch **(39)**.
33. Downshift gear paddle **(85)**.
34. Rear window isolator switch.
35. Window switches **(49)**.
36. Mirror adjustment/power folding switches **(51)**.
37. Central locking/unlocking switches.
38. Driving position memory switches **(20)**.

